owner.ford.com

ford.ca

December 2017
Second Printing
Owner's Manual
Focus
Litho in U.S.A.

JM5J 19A321 AA

2018 FOCUS Owner's Manual

2018 FOCUS Owner's Manual

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2017

All rights reserved.

Part Number: JM5J 19A321 AA 201706 20171106151015

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual....7
Symbols Glossary....7
Data Recording....9
California Proposition 65....11
Perchlorate....11
Ford Credit....11
Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Special Notices....12
Mobile Communications Equipment....13
Export Unique Options....13

Environment

Protecting the Environment....15

Child Safety

General Information....16
Installing Child Restraints....17
Booster Seats....24
Child Restraint Positioning....26
Child Safety Locks....27

Seatbelts

Principle of Operation....29
Fastening the Seatbelts....30
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....32
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....32
Seatbelt Reminder....33
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....35
Seatbelt Extension....35

Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™....37

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation....38
Driver and Passenger Airbags....39
Front Passenger Sensing System....40
Side Airbags....43
Driver Knee Airbag....44
Safety Canopy™....44
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....45
Airbag Disposal....46

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies....47
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry....47
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Integrated Key Transmitter....50
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry with Remote Start....51
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....54

MyKey™

Principle of Operation....55
Creating a MyKey....56
Clearing All MyKeys....57
Checking MyKey System Status....58
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....58
MyKey Troubleshooting....58

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking....60
Manual Liftgate....64
Keyless Entry....65
Interior Luggage Compartment Release - 4-Door....66

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System....68

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Table of Contents

Anti-Theft Alarm....70

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel....71
Audio Control....71
Voice Control....72
Cruise Control....72
Information Display Control....72
Heated Steering Wheel....73

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers....74
Windshield Washers....74
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....75

Lighting

General Information....76
Lighting Control....76
Autolamps....77
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....77
Headlamp Exit Delay....78
Daytime Running Lamps....78
Automatic High Beam Control....79
Front Fog Lamps....80
Direction Indicators....80
Interior Lamps....80
Ambient Lighting....81

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows....82
Exterior Mirrors....83
Interior Mirror....84
Sun Visors....84
Moonroof....85

Instrument Cluster

Gauges....86
Warning Lamps and Indicators....87
Audible Warnings and Indicators....90

Information Displays

General Information....92
Trip Computer....95
Information Messages....96

Climate Control

Manual Climate Control....104
Automatic Climate Control....105
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....107
Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
Cabin Air Filter....109
Remote Start....110

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position....111
Head Restraints....111
Manual Seats....113
Power Seats....113
Rear Seats....114
Heated Seats....116

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points....117

Storage Compartments

Center Console....118
Overhead Console....118

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information....119
Ignition Switch....119
Keyless Starting....119
Starting a Gasoline Engine....122
Engine Block Heater....125

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Table of Contents

Unique Driving Characteristics
Auto-Start-Stop....127

Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions....129
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....129
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....130
Running Out of Fuel....130
Refueling....132
Fuel Consumption....134

Engine Emission Control
Emission Law....136
Catalytic Converter....137

Transmission
Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual Transmission (MMT6)....140
Manual Transmission - 5-Speed Manual Transmission (MTX-75)....141
Automatic Transmission....142

Brakes
General Information....147
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....148
Parking Brake....148
Hill Start Assist....148

Traction Control
Principle of Operation....150
Using Traction Control....150

Stability Control
Principle of Operation....151
Using Stability Control....152

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation....153
Rear Parking Aid....153
Front Parking Aid....154
Active Park Assist....155
Rear View Camera....159

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation....162
Using Cruise Control....162

Driving Aids
Driver Alert....164
Lane Keeping System....165
Blind Spot Information System....169
Cross Traffic Alert....171
Eco Mode....173
Steering....174

Load Carrying
Rear Under Floor Storage....176
Luggage Covers....176
Load Limit....176

Towing
Towing a Trailer....182
Transporting the Vehicle....182
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission....182
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission....183
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L, Automatic Transmission....183

Driving Hints
Breaking-In....186
Economical Driving....186
Cold Weather Precautions....186
Driving Through Water....186
Floor Mats....187

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Table of Contents

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance....188
Hazard Flashers....189
Fuel Shutoff....189
Jump Starting the Vehicle....190
Post-Crash Alert System....192

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need....193
In California (U.S. Only)....194
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only)....195
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....196
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....196
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....197
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....198
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....198

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart....200
Changing a Fuse....209

Maintenance

General Information....211
Opening and Closing the Hood....211
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™....213
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L....214
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™....215
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L....215
Engine Oil Check....215
Oil Change Indicator Reset....216
Engine Cooling Fan....216
Engine Coolant Check....217
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....221
Brake Fluid Check....221
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission....221
Washer Fluid Check....222
Changing the 12V Battery....222
Checking the Wiper Blades....223
Changing the Front Wiper Blades....223
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades....224
Adjusting the Headlamps....225
Removing a Headlamp....226
Changing a Bulb....227
Bulb Specification Chart....232
Changing the Engine Air Filter....234
Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™....235
Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L....235

Vehicle Care

General Information....236
Cleaning Products....236
Cleaning the Exterior....237
Waxing....238
Cleaning the Engine....238
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....239
Cleaning the Interior....239
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....240
Cleaning Leather Seats....240
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....241
Cleaning the Wheels....241
Vehicle Storage....241
Body Styling Kits....243

Wheels and Tires

Tire Care....244
Using Snow Chains....259
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....260

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Changing a Road Wheel....263
Driving at High Speed....266
Lug Nuts....267

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....268
Engine Specifications - 2.0L....269
Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L EcoBoost™....270
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L....271
Vehicle Identification Number....272
Vehicle Certification Label....273
Transmission Code Designation....273
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....274
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L....277

Audio System

General Information....281
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC....282
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System....285
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Satellite Radio....289
Digital Radio....291
Satellite Radio....294
USB Port....296
Media Hub....296

SYNC™

General Information....297
Using Voice Recognition....299
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....301
SYNC™ Applications and Services....313
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....318
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....327

SYNC™ 3

General Information....335
Home Screen....346
Using Voice Recognition....347
Entertainment....353
Phone....363
Navigation....368
Apps....376
Settings....379
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....393

Accessories

Accessories....405

Ford Protect

Ford Protect....407

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information....409
Normal Scheduled Maintenance....412
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance....414
Scheduled Maintenance Record....417

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility....427
End User License Agreement....429
Type Approvals....455

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

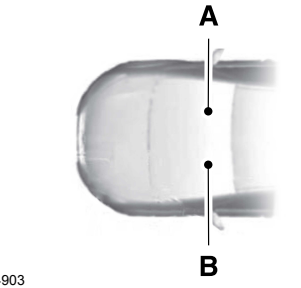
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Air conditioning system


Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Flammable


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window


Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Requires registered technician


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


See Service Manual


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (for example, your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, such as SYNC Vehicle Health Report or MyFord Mobile App, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at www.ford.ca, including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries. See **SYNC™** (page 297).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: ***Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.***

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: ***Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature.*** *See* ***SYNC™*** *(page 297).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See **SYNC™** (page 297).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNINGS

Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazard-ouswaste/perchlorate

FORD CREDIT

US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

We offer a number of convenient ways for you to contact us, and to manage your account.

Call 1-800-727-7000.

For more information about Ford Credit and access to Account Manager, go to www.ford.com/finance.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS

You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

WARNING

Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features,

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For details about Ford Motor Company's sustainability progress and initiatives visit:

Web Address
www.sustainability.ford.com

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNINGS

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 40).

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

Child Restraints



E142594

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Use a child safety restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Properly restrain children 12 and under in the rear seat whenever possible.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child restraint will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.*



E142528

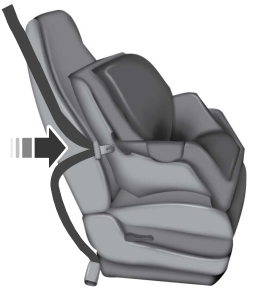
1. Position the child safety restraint in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

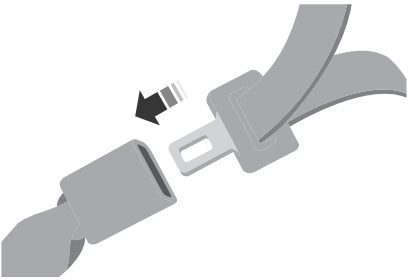
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

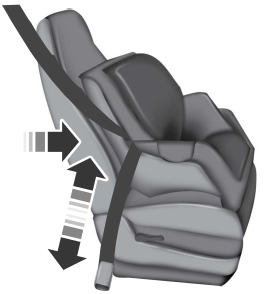
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child restraint is equipped).



E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than approximately 1 in (3 cm) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

WARNINGS

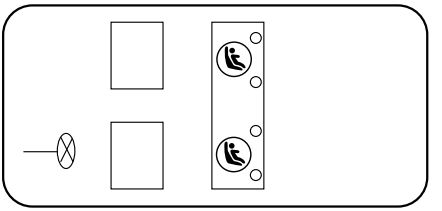
Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the seatback and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

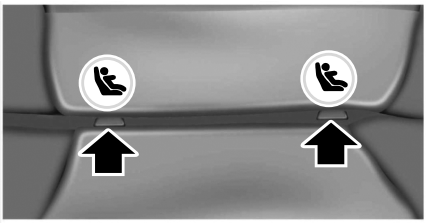
LATCH compatible child safety restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint, however the seatbelt can still be used to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child restraint installation at the seating positions marked with the child restraint symbol.



E169083

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback above the symbols as shown. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child restraint with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety restraints with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child restraint only to the anchors shown.

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING

The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. A child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child restraints (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than approximately 1 in (3 cm) when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Combining Seatbelt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Restraints

When used in combination, either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child restraint.

Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child safety restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety restraints.

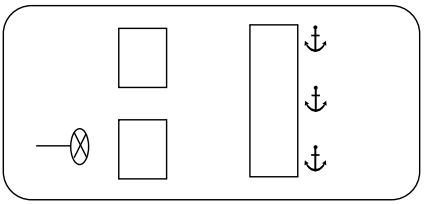
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

Four door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located under a cover marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).

Five door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located on the back panel of the rear seat.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety restraint with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

Four Door

1. Route the child safety restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



E144274

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

3. Open the tether anchor cover.



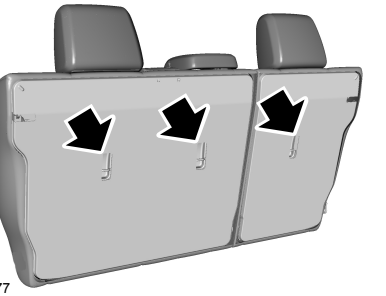
E144275

4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety restraint may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.
5. Tighten the child safety restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If the safety restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Five Door

1. Route the child safety restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



E164077

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety restraint may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.
4. Tighten the child safety restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

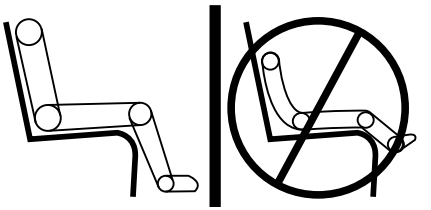
BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age 4 and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E70710

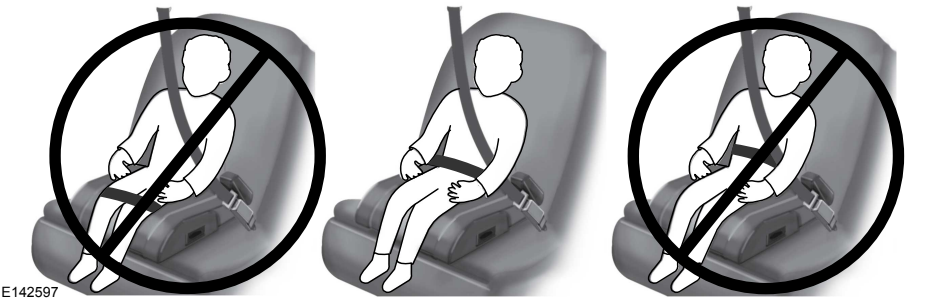
- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596



E142597

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 111).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



E112197

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelts could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the seatbelt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

WARNINGS

When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear seatbelts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, (except driver seatbelt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



· Seatbelt warning light and chime.



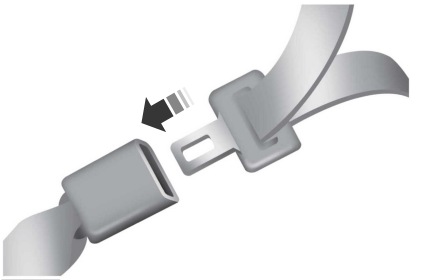
· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners will activate when the Safety Canopy is deployed.

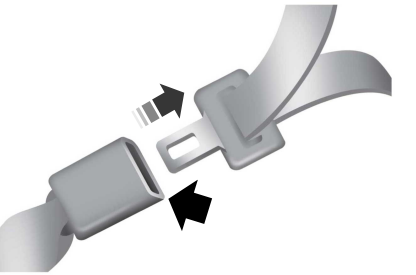
FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outermost and rear safety restraints in your vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.


E142587

1. Insert the seatbelt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch.

Note: *Make sure that the seatbelt tongue is properly fastened in the seatbelt buckle.*

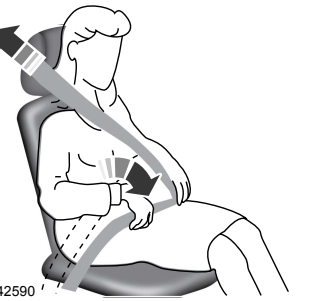

E142588

2. Press the button to release the seatbelt tongue.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING

Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.


E142590

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

After a crash, have a qualified technician check all the seatbelts to make sure the seatbelts including the automatic locking retractor feature for child restraints operate properly. We recommend replacing any system that has damage or does not operate properly. Failure to do so can result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or another crash.

You must replace the seatbelt if the automatic locking retractor or any other seatbelt function is not operating correctly. Failure to replace the seatbelt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a crash.

All safety restraints in your vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver seatbelt has the first type of locking mode. The front outermost passenger and rear seat seatbelts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if you brake suddenly or turn a corner sharply, or your vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If the seatbelt retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract. If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position. For rear seatbelts, recline the rear seat backrest or push the seat backrest cushion away from the seatbelt. Feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The seatbelt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

Using Automatic Locking Mode

You should use automatic locking mode when a child safety seat, except a booster, is on the front passenger seat or rear seat. Children 12 years old and under should be correctly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 16).



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire seatbelt out.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

3. Let the seatbelt retract.

Note: *As the seatbelt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.*

Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode

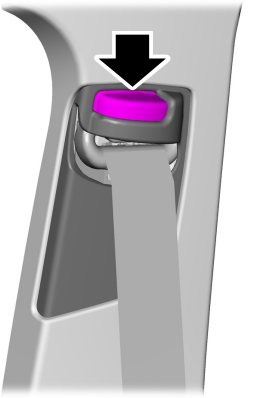
Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and return the seatbelt to the vehicle sensitive mode.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E183582

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver seatbelt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Conditions of operation

If	Then
The driver seatbelt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for a few seconds.
The driver seatbelt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The seatbelt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver seatbelt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The seatbelt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SEATBELT REMINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the seatbelt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the seatbelt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a seatbelt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If	Then
You and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your seatbelts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.
The seatbelt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING

While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Note: *If you are using MyKey™, you cannot disable the Belt-Minder. Also, if you have previously disabled the Belt-Minder, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey™. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 55).*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) (manual transmission).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger seatbelts are unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the seatbelt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning light turns on.
4. While the seatbelt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
- This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 236).

SEATBELT EXTENSION

WARNINGS

Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

Only use extensions provided free of charge by Ford Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.

Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the belt across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Ford Motor Company dealers. Only Ford seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelts manufacturer should be used with Ford seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Ford vehicle restraint system.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Passenger seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning lamp and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, passenger seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries,

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

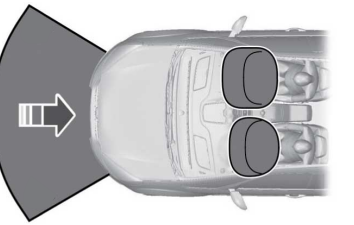
DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 45).

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.

Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E188175

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm they are functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the OFF lamp and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp and remains illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly, See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 45).

If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat, please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 193).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the seat airbag supplemental restraint systems, its fuses or the seat cover on a vehicle containing seat airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected as soon as possible. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided to occupants in certain side impact crashes.



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.



Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 45).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

A driver's knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver's knee airbag based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver's knee airbag may deploy but the driver's front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 45).

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

WARNINGS

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

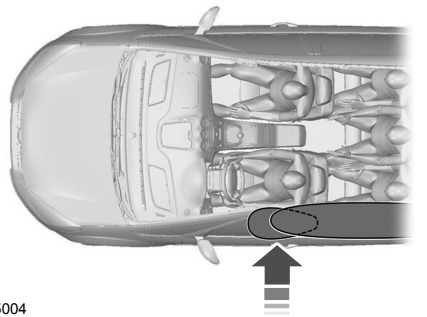
All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 45).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. A warning indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates the readiness of the safety system. If this warning indicator light is not functioning and there is another fault within the system, the message cluster could display an airbag failure warning. You could hear five tones that repeat periodically until you repair the problem, the warning indicator light could illuminate or both. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

The indicator light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- The indicator light either flashes or stays illuminated.
- You could hear five tones that periodically repeat until the problem is repaired.
- A message could appear in the information display.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when your vehicle sustains frontal or sideways deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the crash conditions (for example, crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal, side and rollover crashes.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. Side airbags could activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The knee airbag(s) could deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy could activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Licence exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around the vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

Other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems can also use the radio frequency used by your remote control. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY

Intelligent Access Key

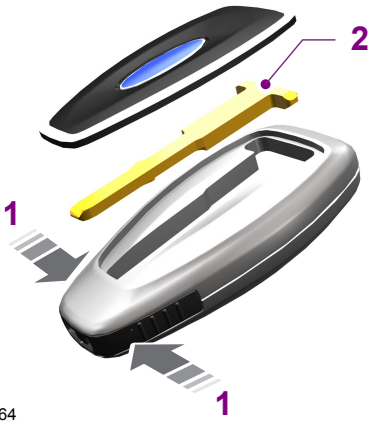


E162192

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

To release the key blade:

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 68).

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

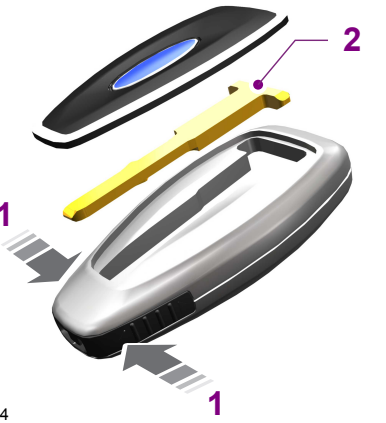
Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

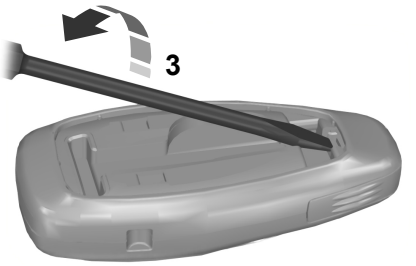
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



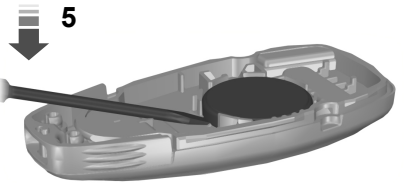
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing downward.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from the vehicle.*

The transmitter should operate normally.

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn may sound and the direction indicators flash.

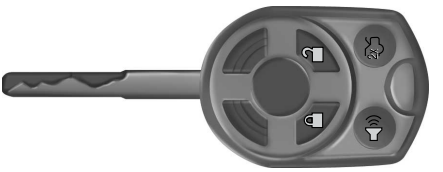
The horn may sound twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

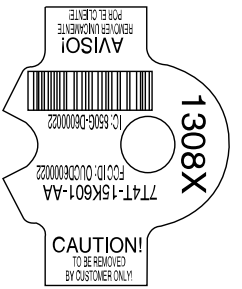
REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRATED KEY TRANSMITTER

Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (If Equipped)



E142585

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The buttons on the key operate the remote control.



E138615

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 68).

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

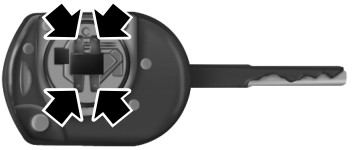
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the symbols inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

The horn sounds twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

Sounding the Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to silence it.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY WITH REMOTE START

Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)



E138616

The intelligent access key operates the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to switch on the push-button start system.

Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E142431

Slide the release on the back of the transmitter, then pull the blade out.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E138618

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 68).

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



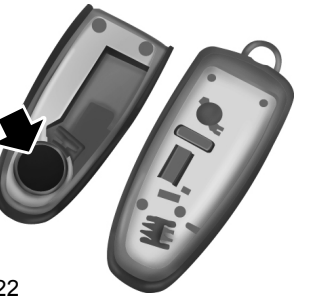
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

1. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E142432

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



E138622

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

The horn sounds twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

Sounding the Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate it.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

Remote Start

WARNING

To prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.



The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from the outside. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when your vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 105).

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

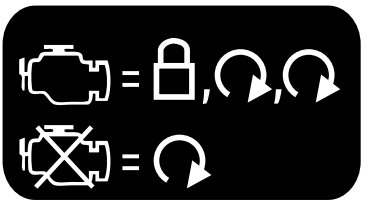
Note: *Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.*

The remote start system does not work if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system activates.
- You turn off the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The powertrain fault indicator was on the last time you drove your vehicle.

Remote Starting your Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. If you do not follow this sequence, your vehicle does not start remotely, the direction indicators do not flash twice and the horn does not sound.*



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The direction indicators flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start runs the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. You can switch it on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

The power windows do not work during remote start and the radio does not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps remain on and your vehicle runs for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Note: *If you remote start your vehicle with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the push button ignition switch on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.*

Extending the Engine Running Time

To extend the engine running time duration of your vehicle during remote start, repeat steps 1 and 2 while the engine is running. If the duration is set to 10 minutes, the duration extends by another 10 minutes. For example, if your vehicle had been running from the first remote start for 5 minutes, your vehicle continues to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can extend the engine running time duration to a maximum of 30 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

Turning Your Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to your vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can turn the remote start system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 68).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the ignition on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with a push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin key are present, the admin key will be recognized by the vehicle when you start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel warning. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving MyKey users more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if equipped on your vehicle.
- Pre-collision assist and Lane Departure warning switches on every ignition cycle, but can be switched off by the MyKey user.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the engine. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off AdvanceTrac or traction control, E911 or Emergency Assist, or the Do Not Disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access transmitter into the backup position. The location of your backup position is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 119).
2. Switch the vehicle on.
3. Access the main menu through the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings by doing the following:

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

Note: *When you make any changes to your MyKey settings, you change the settings for every MyKey. You cannot make individual changes to apply to certain MyKeys.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

All Vehicles

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key used to start the vehicle is not an admin key. The key used to start the vehicle is the only key. There always has to be at least one admin key. The passive anti-theft system is not programmed to your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 68).
I cannot program the configurable settings.	The key used to start your vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key used to start your vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 68).
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey is not being used by the intended user. The MyKeys have been cleared and the MyKey system has been reset.

Vehicles With Push-Button Start

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The transmitter is not in the backup position. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
There are no MyKey driving modes.	An admin key is present when you switch the ignition on. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 56).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

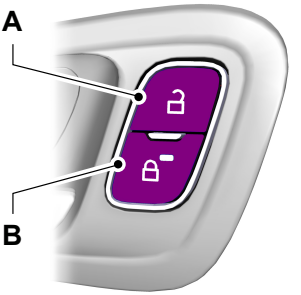
LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Note: *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E184784

A Unlock.
B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

They will remain illuminated for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after approximately 11 seconds.

You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control or keyless keypad, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches.

Opening a Rear Door From the Inside

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

The liftgate or luggage compartment release button will only work when the vehicle speed is less than 4 mph (7 km/h).

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)

Press the button to unlock the driver door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash. Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the liftgate or luggage compartment are closed.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Mislock

If any door or the liftgate or luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.

Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment



Press twice within three seconds to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate or luggage compartment before driving your vehicle. An unlatched liftgate or luggage compartment may cause objects to fall out or block your view.

Closing the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment

The liftgate or luggage compartment will not fully close if an intelligent access key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

Note: *If a second intelligent access key is located within the liftgate or luggage compartment detection range, the liftgate or luggage compartment can be fully closed.*

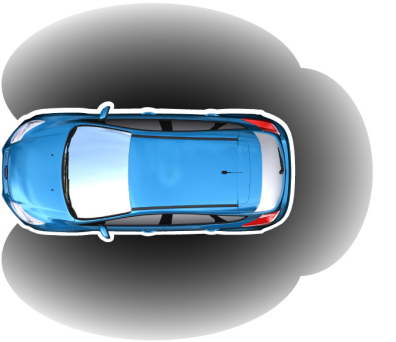
Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The intelligent access key battery has no charge.
- The intelligent access key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See* ***Keys and Remote Controls*** *(page 47).*

The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control.



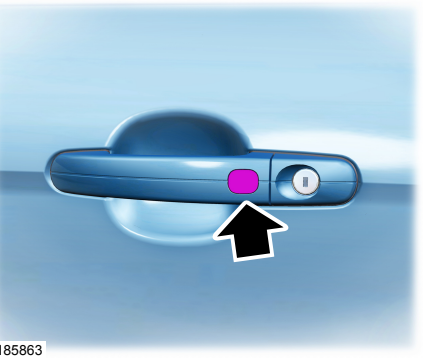
E78276

You must have the intelligent access key within 5 ft (1.5 m) of your vehicle.

Note: *The system may not function if the intelligent access key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

At a Door

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.



E185863

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

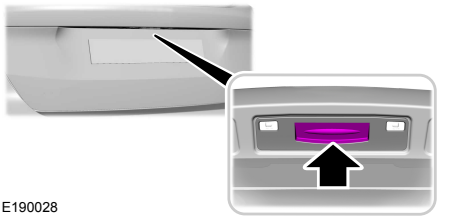
The locking sensors are on the front door handles.

Touch a locking sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. There is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

Note: *Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.*

At the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (If Equipped)

This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle if the key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock and the horn will sound twice if the key is still in the ignition.

You can still lock your vehicle with the key in the ignition. To do this, use the keyless entry keypad with the driver door closed, or press the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, you can lock your vehicle by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This helps to prevent you from locking your key inside the passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, transmission in park (P) and the ignition off, the system will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the last door. If the system finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn sounds twice, indicating that a key is inside.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if the ignition is on.

Disabled Intelligent Access Keys

Intelligent access keys left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled.

You cannot use a disabled intelligent access key to switch the ignition on.

You will reactivate disabled intelligent access keys when you switch the ignition on using a valid key.

Autolock

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors will not autounlock.*

To enable or disable autounlock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door lock control and within five seconds, press the power door unlock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The lamps turn off if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- 25 seconds have elapsed.

The lamps will not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lighting control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

For vehicles with an integrated keyhead transmitter, the interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when you close all the doors, you switch the ignition off and you remove the key from the ignition.

The lamps turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You insert the key in the ignition (integrated keyhead transmitter only).
- You press the **START/STOP** button (intelligent access key only).

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver will turn them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

If you leave the ignition switched on and the engine is not running, the battery saver will turn the ignition off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after 45 minutes have elapsed.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment

With the Remote Control

Press twice within three seconds to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

From Inside Your Vehicle

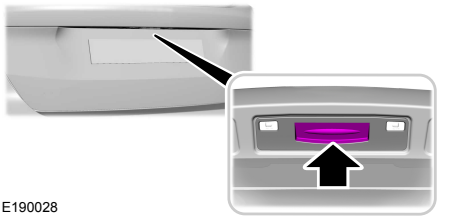
Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Press the button on the lighting control panel twice within three seconds.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Shift into park (P) and then press the button on the lighting control panel.

From Outside Your Vehicle



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access transmitter within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the liftgate or luggage compartment.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

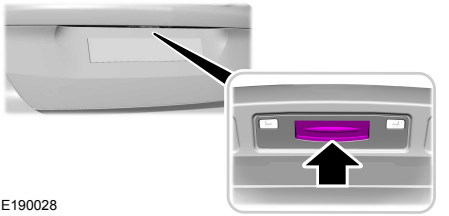
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate



E155976

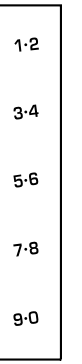
A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is located near the driver window. It is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons.

Note: *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Enter your entry code again more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to do the following:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Program and erase user codes.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also program up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. Press **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must enter each number within five seconds of each other.
4. Press **1•2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1-3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3•4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5•6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7•8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9•0** to save personal code 5.

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1•2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the factory-set five-digit code works.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after any of the following occur:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch your vehicle on.
- You unlock the vehicle using intelligent access.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking All Doors

Press and hold **7•8** and **9•0** on the keypad simultaneously with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter a code first.

Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3•4** on the keypad within five seconds.

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set or your personal five-digit code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps illuminate.

Note: *All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is turned off. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 60).*

INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE - 4-DOOR

WARNINGS

Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

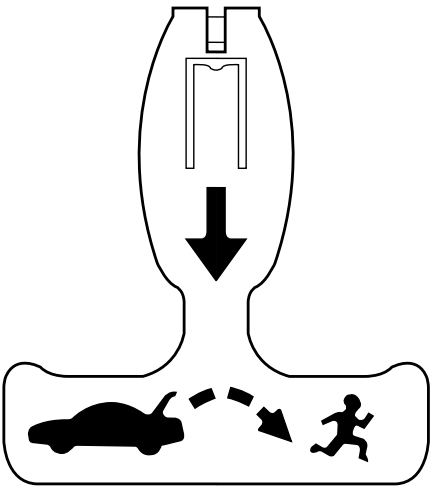
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.



E144403

The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in engine starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key when starting your vehicle. If your vehicle fails to start, switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the key and start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

SecuriLock

The system helps prevent the engine from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. A message may appear in the information display.

If your vehicle fails to start, the system may have a fault. Contact an authorized dealer. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The system arms when you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

The system disarms when you switch the ignition on with a coded key.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes with two keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and turns on the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your intelligent access keys are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store a spare intelligent access key away from your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the vehicle immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If you have successfully programmed the coded key, it will start your vehicle and operate the remote entry system.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If programming remains unsuccessful, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Wait 20 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 9 to program an additional key.

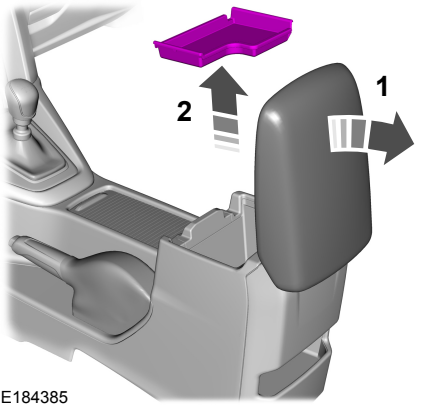
Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

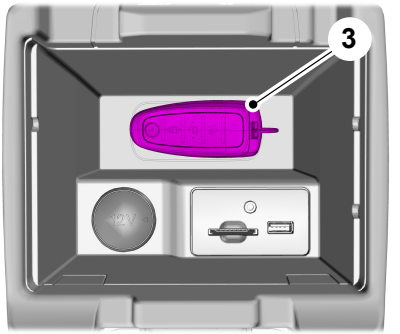
Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E184386

3. Place the first programmed intelligent access key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. Press the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key flat on the symbol.
8. Press the push button ignition switch.
9. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
10. Remove the intelligent access key.
11. Within 10 seconds, place the unprogrammed intelligent access key flat on the symbol.
12. Press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Check that the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 12. If programming remains unsuccessful, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver door to unlock your vehicle, then switch your vehicle on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

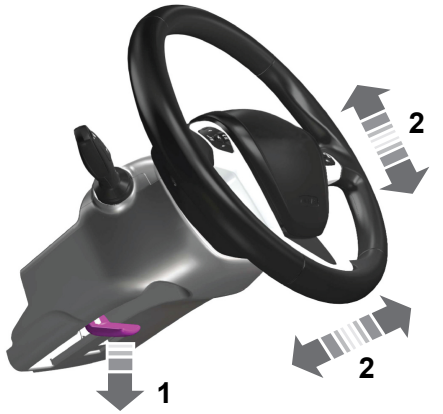
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 111).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



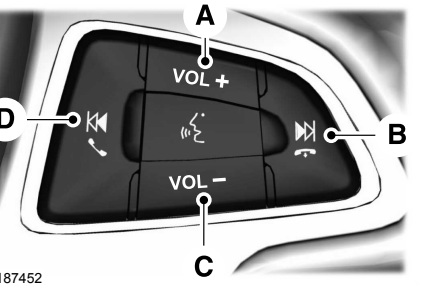
E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E187452

A Volume up.

B Seek up or next.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

C Volume down.

D Seek down or previous.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

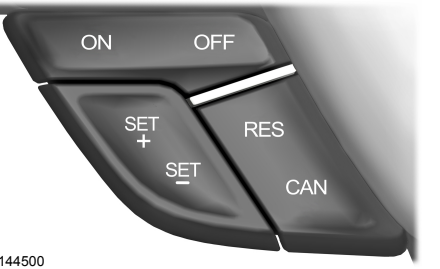
VOICE CONTROL



E186744

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 347).

CRUISE CONTROL



E144500

See **Principle of Operation** (page 162).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

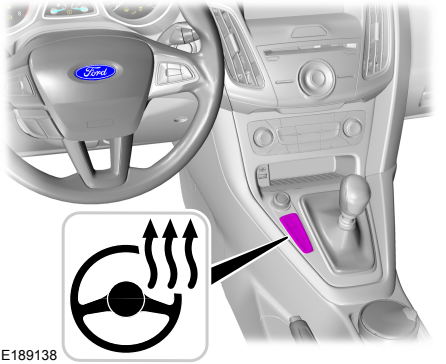


E188902

See **General Information** (page 92).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)


E189138

Press the button to switch the system on. The LED on the switch illuminates when the system is on.

Note: *The system only operates when the engine is running.*

Press the button to switch the system off.

The system automatically controls the temperature to avoid overheating.

Under high interior temperature conditions, there may be no perceived warming. This is normal and is not a sign of a system fault.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

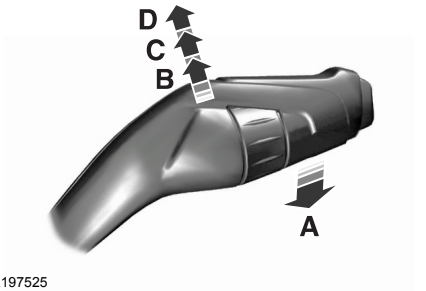
Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See* ***Checking the Wiper Blades*** *(page 223). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Front Wiper Blades*** *(page 223).*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

Note: *When wiping on dry glass, the wipers may switch to the next lower operating mode (low-speed or intermittent). The previous operation mode may resume after the windshield becomes wet again.*

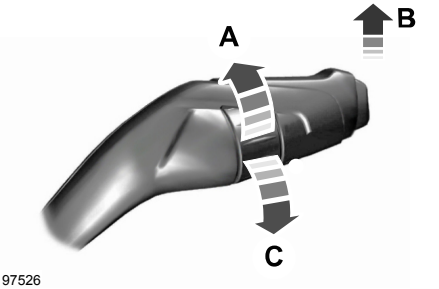


E197525

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Note: *Move to position* ***O*** *marked on the wiper lever to switch off.*

Intermittent Wipe



E197526

A Short-wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

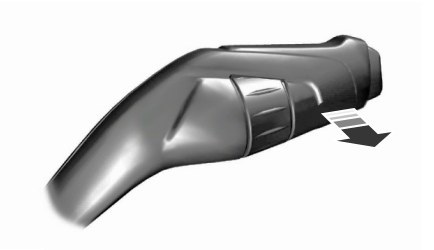
Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E197528

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (If Equipped)

Rear Window Wiper

Note: *Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.*



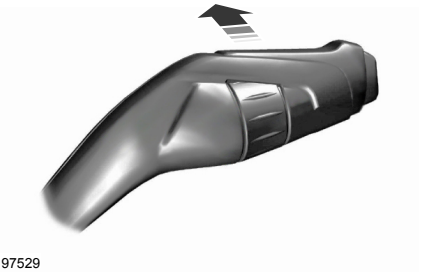
E197647

A Intermittent wipe.
B Low speed wipe.
C Off.

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

When you shift into reverse (R) and the front wipers are on, the rear wiper may automatically turn on to intermittent wipe.

Rear Window Washer



E197529

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

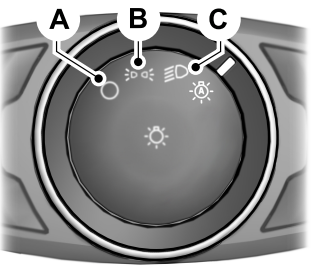
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

A Off.

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

C Headlamps.

Parking Lamps

Note: *Prolonged use of the parking lamps will cause the battery to run out of charge.*

Note: *Parking lamps may turn off automatically. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Switch the ignition off.

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

High Beams



E163718

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



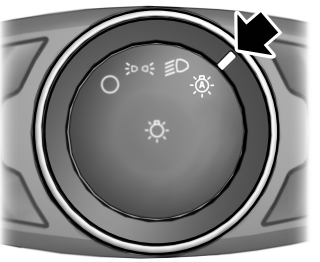
E163719

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps turn on in low light situations, or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 92).*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*



E161902

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. The ignition is switched to the on position.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps positions.
4. The headlamps are off.

Type 2 - Configurable

Switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. They are switched on in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).
2. The ignition is switched to the on position.
3. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

4. The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
5. The headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps, and you can use them to temporarily override autolamp control.

When switched off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns off high beams before they can distract other road users. Low beams remain on.

Note: *The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.*

Note: *The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.*

Note: *Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active, the high beams turn on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (51 km/h).

The system turns the high beams off if:

- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 27 mph (44 km/h).
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).



E142451

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 77).

Overriding the System

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Automatic High Beam Indicator (If Equipped)



The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

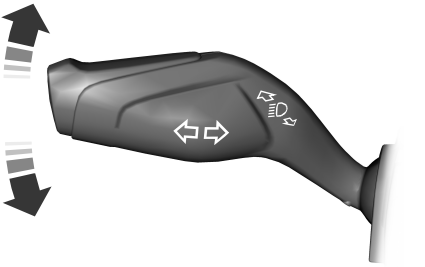


E142453

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except Off and the high beams are not on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on when:

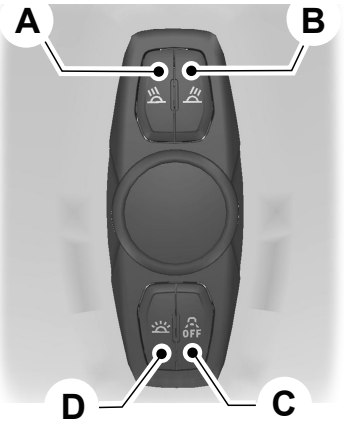
- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the buttons on the map lamps.

Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)

Note: *Press the door function switch to switch off interior lights when you open any door. The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off. Press the switch again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp illuminates white when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps switch on.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

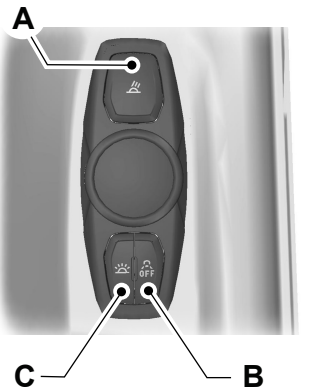
Center Mounted Lamp



E139420

A Left-hand side map lamp.
B Right-hand side map lamp.
C Door function switch.
D All lamps on switch.

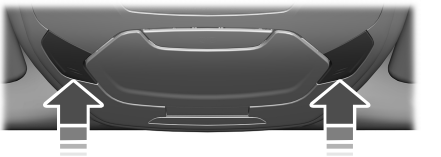
Side Mounted Lamp



E139419

A Map lamp.
B Door function switch.
C All lamps on switch.

Reading Lamps



E258312

AMBIENT LIGHTING

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close (If Equipped)

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

Overriding Bounce-Back

WARNING

If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Resetting Bounce-Back

WARNING

Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

6. Release the switch.
7. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the switch.
10. Open the window and then try to close it using one-touch close.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Accessory Delay

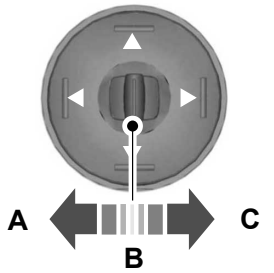
You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

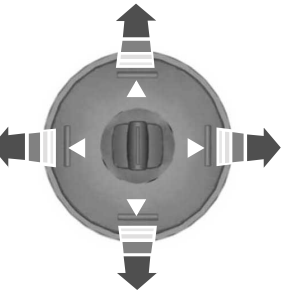
WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

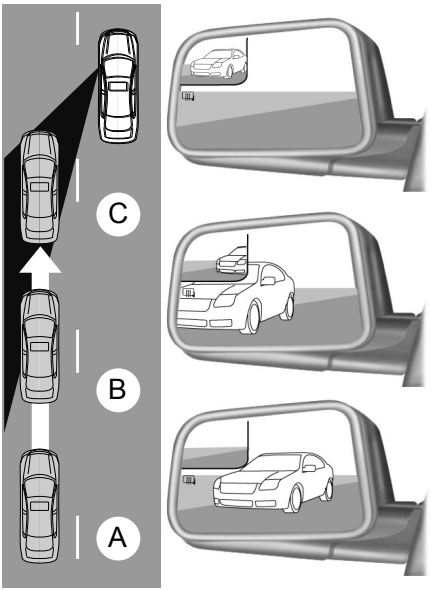
WARNING

Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).

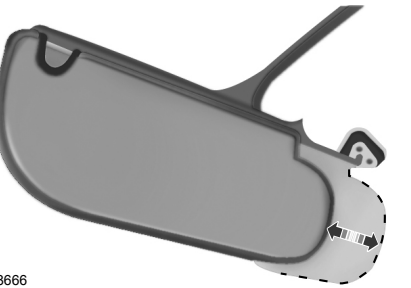
INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

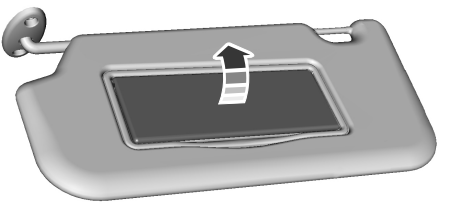
SUN VISORS (If Equipped)



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF

WARNINGS

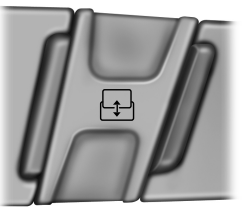
Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof control is on the overhead console.

The moonroof has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E138669

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. The moonroof stops short of the fully open position.

Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling that may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

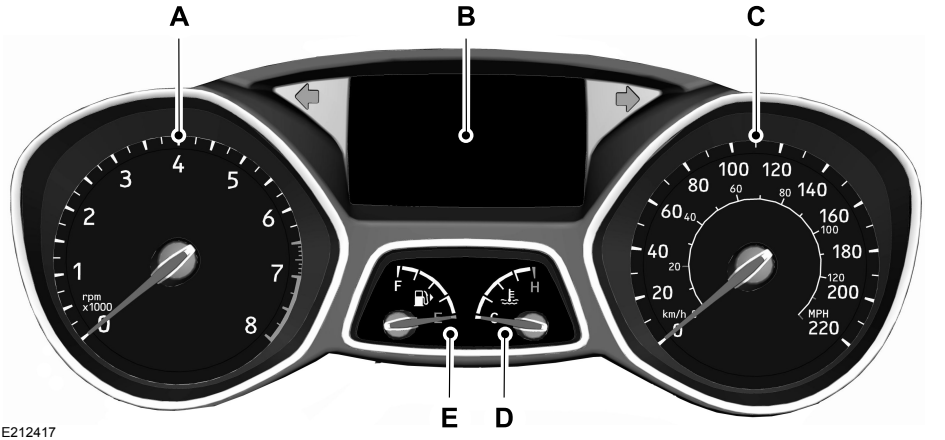
Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GAUGES



E212417

A Tachometer.
B Information display.
C Speedometer.
D Engine coolant temperature gauge.
E Fuel Gauge.

Information Display

Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Outside Air Temperature (If Equipped)

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 95).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 92).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 217).

Fuel Gauge

Note: *: The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal.

Note: *It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.*

Note: *The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.*

Note: *If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers at about 50 miles (80 km). The low fuel warning light will light, a warning chime will sound and a pop up will be shown in the display indicating the remaining distance to empty. You will also get a subsequent reminder at 20, 10 and 0 miles.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator

(If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Auto-Start-Stop Indicator



It illuminates when the engine has automatically stopped. It flashes to inform you when the engine needs to restart. The indicator is shown with a strikethrough if the system is not available.

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).

Battery Charging Condition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

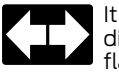
Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Using Cruise Control** (page 162).

Direction Indicator



It illuminates when you switch a direction indicator or the hazard flashers on. Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Warning Lamps



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration). Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Service Engine Soon

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing. See **Emission Law** (page 136).

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system activates.

Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if the liftgate is open.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 260).

Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Message Center Indicator



It illuminates when a new message is stored in the information display.

The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

WARNING



If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Stability Control** (page 151). See **Traction Control** (page 150).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Low Fuel Minder

A low fuel reminder triggers at about 50 miles (80 km). The low fuel warning light will light, a warning chime will sound and a pop up will be shown in the display indicating the remaining distance to empty. You will also get a subsequent reminder at 20, 10 and 0 miles.

Fasten Safety Belt

Sounds as a reminder to fasten your safety belt.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

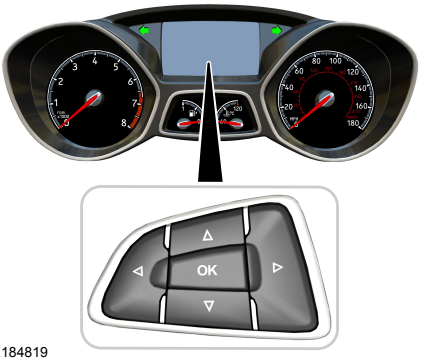
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E184819

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press the ***OK*** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Trip 1 and 2[1]	
Option to display all the values on screen.	
Speed	
Trip Odometer	
Average Fuel	Ford EcoMode
	Gear Shifting

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Trip 1 and 2[1]	
	Anticipation
	Speed
	Ford EcoMode
Inst Fuel Econ	
Distance to E	
Trip Timer	
Outside Temp.	
Option to select for navigation display.	

[1] See **Trip Computer** (page 95).

Information
Driver Alert
MyKey
MyKey Info
System Check

Settings		
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl	
	Blindspot	
	Collision Warn	
	Cross Traffic	
	Cruise Control	Adaptive
		Normal
	Driver Alert	
	Hill Start Assist	
	Tire Monitor	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Settings			
	Lane Keeping		
Vehicle settings	Auto Engine Off	On or Off.	
	Compass	Display	On or Off.
		Calibrate	
		Set Zone	
	Chimes	Park Slot	
		Information	
		Warning	
	Lighting	Traffic (R/L)	
		Auto Highbeam	
		Rain Light	
		Ambient Light	
		DRL	
		Dimming	
		Hdlamp Delay	
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Heater - A/C
			Heated Wheel
			Front Defrost
			Rear Defrost
			Driver Seat
			Passengr Seat
		Duration	
		Quiet Start	
		Restore Default	
		System	
	Wipers	Rain Sensing	
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Settings		
	Traction Ctrl	Always On or User Selectable.
	ESC	Always On or User Selectable.
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable.
	Max Speed	xx MPH (xx km/h) or Off.
	Speed Warning	xx MPH (xx km/h) or Off.
	Volume Limiter	
	Do Not Disturb	Always On or User Selectable.
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys
Display	Navigation info	
	Language	Choose your applicable setting.
	Vehicle Graphic	On or Off.
	Distance	Choose your applicable setting.
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting.

System Check

Active warnings appear first. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Instantaneous Fuel (If Equipped)

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

INFORMATION MESSAGES



E184814

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time. You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved. A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Note: *The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag Fault Service Now	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Alarm System

Message	Action
Alarm Activated Check Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 70).
Alarm Fault Service Required	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off In {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds	Displays if the engine is going to automatically turn off.
Engine Shut Off For Fuel Economy	Displays if the engine automatically turns off to improve fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in {time:#0} Seconds OK to Override	Displays if the engine is going to automatically turn off. Press and hold the ***OK*** button to override the system.

Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Switch Ignition Off	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Fault Service Required	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	Press the brake or clutch pedal. The engine requires restarting manually. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Select Neutral to Start Engine	Displays as a reminder to shift into neutral (N). The engine requires restarting manually. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required	The system is not functioning and the engine requires restarting manually.

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical System Over-voltage Stop Safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Battery Low See Manual	Displays if the battery is low or has no charge. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot Low Visibility See Manual	Displays when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).
Blindspot Right Sensor Fault Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blindspot Left Sensor Fault Service Required	
Blindspot Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays when you attach a trailer to your vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From Right	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From Left	
Cross Traffic Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).
Cross Traffic Fault Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays when you attach a trailer to your vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 169).

Engine

Message	Action
Engine Fault Service Now	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
High Engine Temperature Stop Safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 217).
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temperature	Displays when the engine has limited power to help reduce coolant temperature.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuel System

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	Refuel as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 148).

Keyless Entry

Message	Action
Ford KeyFree Key Inside Vehicle	Displays if you leave a vehicle key in the luggage compartment and switch the ignition on or try to lock your vehicle. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Ford KeyFree No Key Detected	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Ford KeyFree Key Not Inside Car	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the remote key battery requires replacing. See **Remote Control** (page 50).
Switch Ignition Off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Displays if you switch the ignition on without starting the engine. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys Fault Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Lighting

Message	Action
Brake Lamp Bulb Fault	Displays if a brake lamp bulb fails.
Low Beam Bulb Fault	Displays if a low beam bulb fails.
Headlamp Fault Service Required	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Oil Change Required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and your vehicle requires an oil change.
Brake Fluid Level Low Service Now	Displays if the brake fluid level is low or if there is a brake system fault. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 221). Have your vehicle immediately checked.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active. See **MyKey™** (page 55).
MyKey Vehicle Near Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and your vehicle speed approaches a preset speed limit.
MyKey Vehicle at Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
MyKey Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
MyKey Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and seatbelt reminder is activated.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the user tries to switch the parking aid system off.
MyKey ESC Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the user tries to switch the stability control system off.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Message	Action
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when you are programming a MyKey.
MyKey Speed Limited to {mykey speed limit metric:##0} km/h MyKey Speed Limited to {mykey speed limit miles:#0} MPH	Displays when starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.

Parking Aid

Message	Action
Parking Aid Fault Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Applied	Displays if you have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Remote Start

Message	Action
Remote Start Active	Displayed when the remote start system is active.
To Drive: Press Brake and Gear Shift Button	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Seatbelt Reminder

Message	Action
Service Beltminder	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press Brake to Start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 119).

Steering System

Message	Action
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Steering Assist Fault Service required	You will continue to have full steering but will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Fault Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 260).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Message	Action
	If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Traction Control

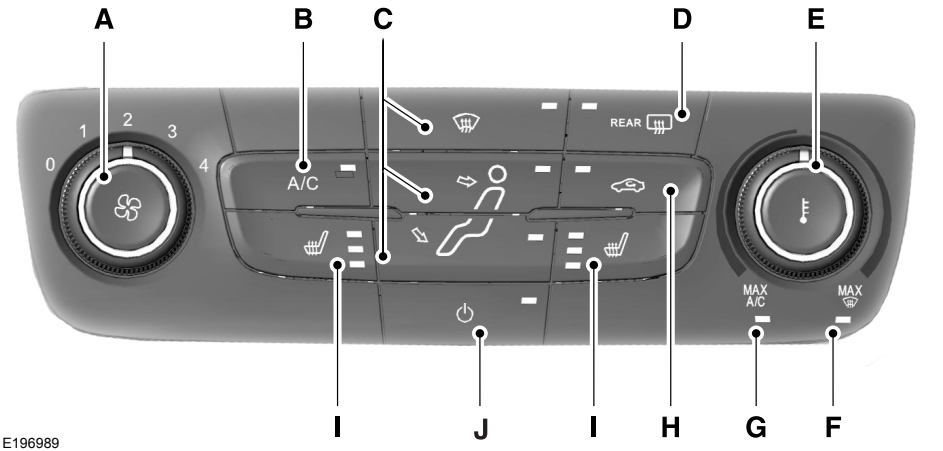
Message	Action
Traction control Off	Displays when you switch the system off. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Fault Service Now	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool.
Transmission Not in Park Select P	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press Brake to Unlock Gearshift Lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Gearshift Lever Unlocked	Displays when the transmission selector lever unlocks.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E196989

A **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

B **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

C **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Note: At least one of these buttons illuminates when the system is on.

D **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

E **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

F **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to turn on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

G **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on.

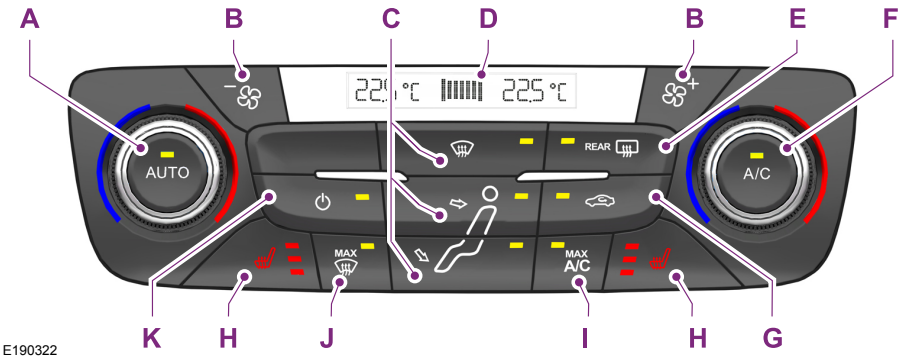
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

H **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

I **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 116).

J **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



A **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

B **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

D **Climate control display:** The display shows the set temperatures and the fan speed.

E **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

F **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

G **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

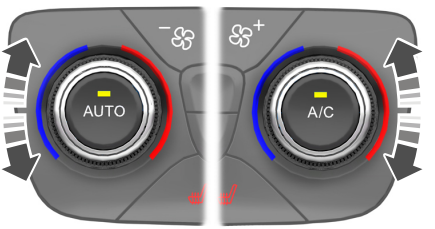
H **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 116).

I **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

J **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

K **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Temperature Control



E183686

You can set a temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). If you select LO, the system is set to permanent cooling. If you select HI, the system is set to permanent heating.

Note: *If you select LO or HI, the system does not maintain a stable temperature.*

Single Zone Temperature Control

In this mode, the climate control system links the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver's side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger's side.

To switch back to single zone control from dual zone, press and hold **AUTO** for a few seconds. The passenger's side temperature switches to the driver's side temperature setting.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Dual Zone Temperature Control

Select a temperature for the passenger's side using the rotary control on the passenger's side. Single zone temperature control automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver's side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently. The display shows the temperature settings for each side.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting as soon as you feel warm air.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.	Press the **MAX A/C** button.
2	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the **A/C** button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *Make sure the vehicle is running before operating the heated windows.*



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)



When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter. It is located behind the center console.

The particulate filtration system reduces the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START

The climate control system adjusts the cabin temperature during remote start.

You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation. Switch on the ignition to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments. You need to switch on certain vehicle-dependent features, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.
- Heated steering wheel.

You can adjust the settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Automatic Settings

You can set the climate control to operate in AUTO mode through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Auto. The climate control system automatically sets the interior temperature to 72ºF (22ºC).

In hot weather, the system is set to 72ºF (22ºC). Cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In cold weather, the system is set to 72ºF (22ºC). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically turn on.

Last Settings

You can set the climate control to operate using the last climate control settings through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater–A/C > Last Settings. The climate control system automatically uses the settings last selected before you turned off the vehicle.

Heated and Cooled Devices

Heated devices typically switch on during cold weather, and cooled devices during hot weather.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

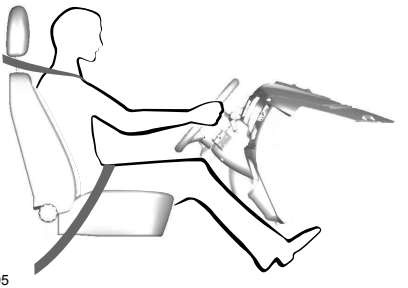
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30°.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

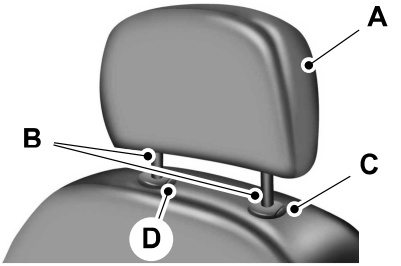
The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible, it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

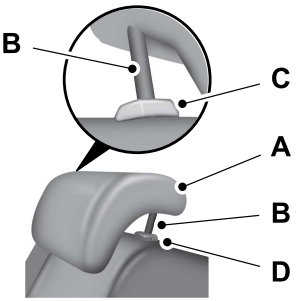
Note: *Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front seat and rear seat outboard head restraints



E138642

Rear center head restraint



E198013

The head restraints consist of:

A An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Two steel stems.

C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.

D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Note: *For the front head restraints, you may need to use a key or similar object to release the head restraint. Press the key into the guide sleeve unlock and remove button to release the head restraint.*

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E197725

A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.

B A lever to adjust the height of the seat.

C A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

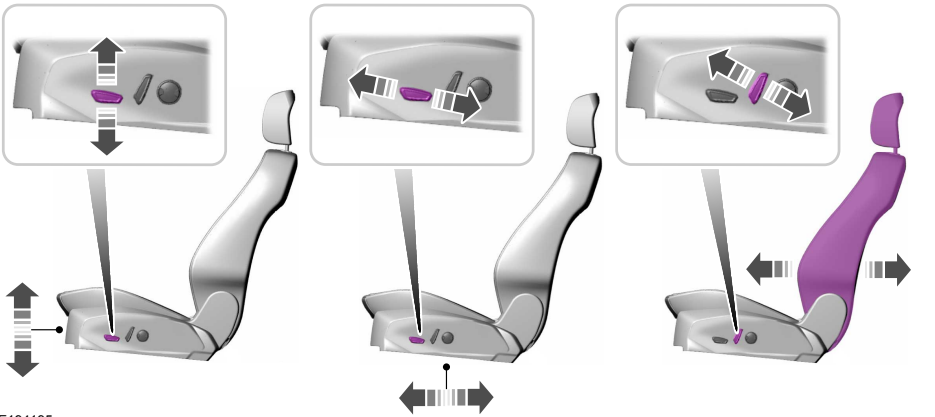
POWER SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

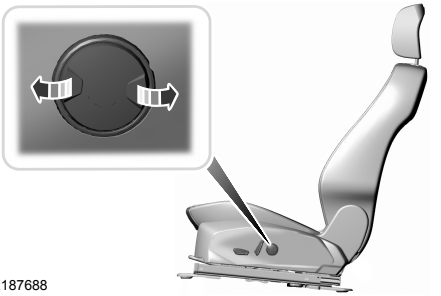
Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E194195

Power Lumbar **(If Equipped)**



E187688



E156656

REAR SEATS

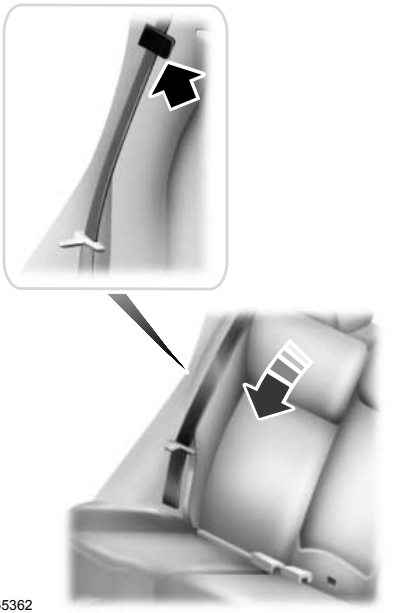
Folding the Seatback

Note: *Before lowering the seatback(s), remove the outboard head restraints. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 111).*

Note: *Your vehicle may have split seatbacks that must be folded individually.*

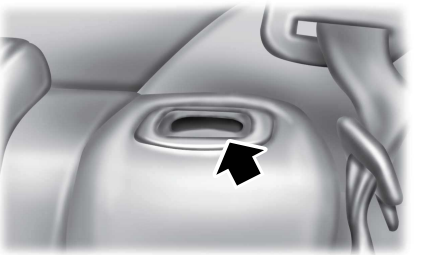
1. Press the unlock buttons down.
2. Push the seatback forward.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E165362

3. Stow the safety belt in the belt stowage clip. This will prevent the safety belt from getting caught in the seat latch.



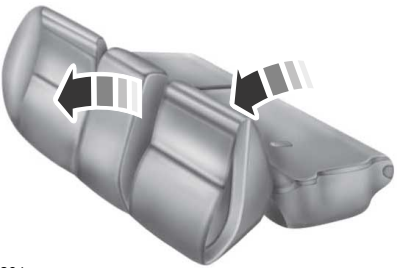
E184203

When raising the seatback(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place and that no red portion is visible on the release button on both sides.

Flip Up Seat Cushions (If Equipped)

WARNING

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. Make sure that the safety belt is not laying on the seat latch. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E184204

For additional cargo space, flip the seat cushions up before folding the seatback. This feature is only available on vehicles with a split folding seatback.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

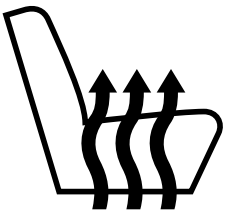
HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNINGS

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *After starting your vehicle, you can use the socket to power 12-volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

After you switch your vehicle off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 11 minutes.

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and can blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary after switching the vehicle off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

Location

You may find power points in the following locations:

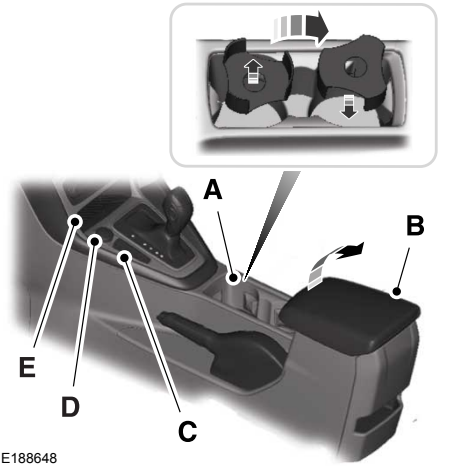
- On the center console.
- In the center console.
- In the cargo area.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

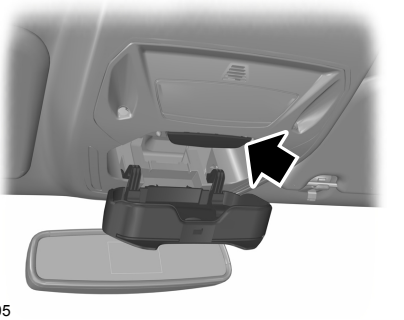
Available console features include:



E188648

A	Cupholder with grips and height adjuster. To use, flip the removable inset piece.
B	Storage compartment with auxiliary power point and media hub.
C	Parking aid, auto-start-stop and heated steering wheel controls.
D	Auxiliary power point.
E	USB port.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

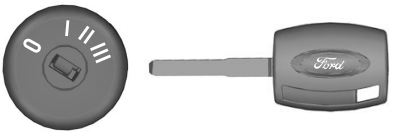
Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

II (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

III (start) - cranks the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING (If Equipped)

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *The ignition automatically turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Note: *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E142555

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

Starting Your Vehicle

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the gearshift lever to park (P).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

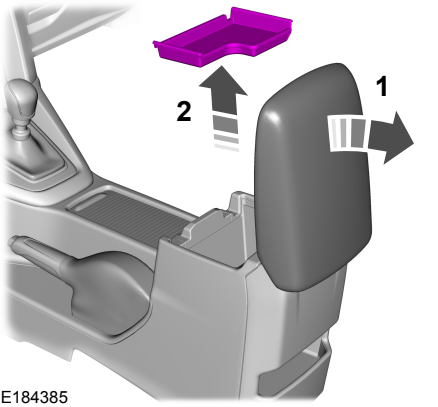
Note: *Releasing the brake pedal during engine starting stops the engine cranking.*

Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

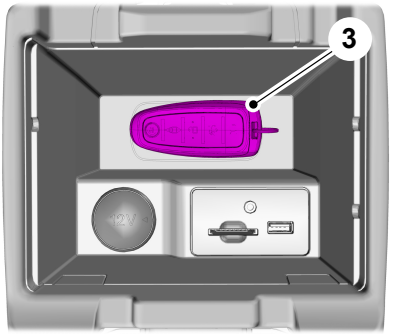
If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E184386

3. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the push button ignition switch is pressed, do the following:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine cranking. A message appears in the information display.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the gearshift lever to park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the gearshift lever to neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. With your vehicle stopped, move the gearshift lever to park (P) and switch the ignition off.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid passive key is not detected.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

You cannot start your vehicle if you open the driver door and the system does not detect a valid passive key.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).
- Switch the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.*

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *You must have your intelligent access key in your vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of park (P).*

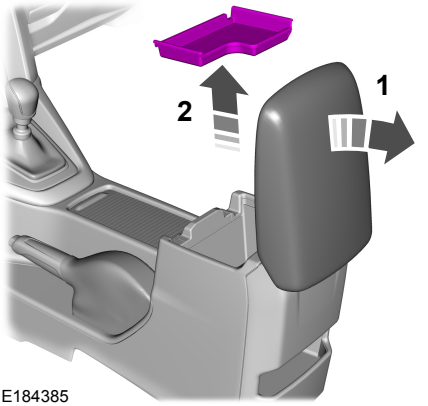
1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

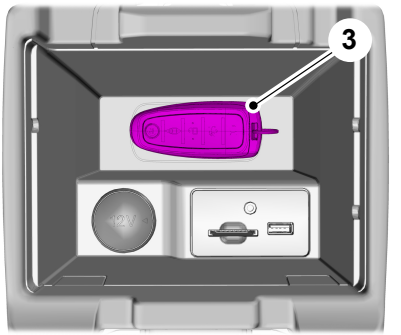
If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.



E184386

3. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart your vehicle without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this feature automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 92).
- During the countdown before shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Note: *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1.0 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AUTO-START-STOP (If Equipped)

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

WARNINGS

Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Before opening the hood or performing any maintenance, fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N) and switch the ignition off.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle. If the ignition is switched on an automatic restart may occur at any time.

The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: *The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine shuts down. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 87). It flashes amber with a message when the driver needs to shift to neutral or press a pedal. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 96). If it illuminates grey, the system is not available.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop with a Manual Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedal.

To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission selector lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.*

Note: *Auto-Start-Stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully press the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, the engine automatically restarts.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop with an Automatic Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle in drive (D).
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
3. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Note: *If your vehicle is in an engine off Auto-Start-Stop state and you move the transmission to reverse (R) while the brake pedal is not pressed, a message will appear on your instrument cluster. Press the brake pedal within 60 seconds or you will need to shift to park (P). A manual restart will be required.*

Note: *If the Shift to P, Restart Engine message appears and the amber Auto-Start-Stop indicator flashes, automatic restart is not available. You must restart your vehicle manually.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To Re-Start the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

Limitations of Use

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low engine operating temperature.
- To maintain the interior climate.
- The battery charge level is low.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver door is opened.
- The driver safety belt is not fastened.
- The transmission is in Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate, for example air conditioning.
- The battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The driver safety belt is not fastened (automatic transmission only).
- The driver door is opened (automatic transmission only).
- The transmission is shifted into drive (automatic transmission only).

Switching the System On and Off



When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

To switch the system off, press the switch and the word OFF illuminates. Press again to switch the system back on. The system only switches off for the current ignition cycle.

Note: *The system may not function if you leave electrical equipment connected with the ignition off.*

Note: *For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

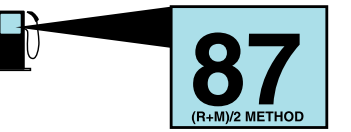
When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 182).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to www.toptiergas.com.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.*

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 130).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.


E157452

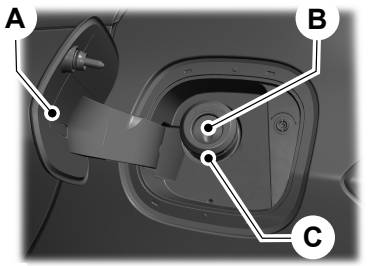
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

REFUELING

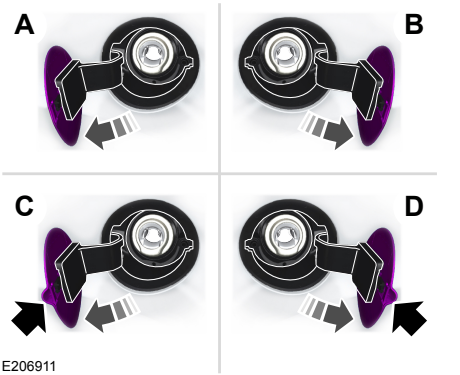
Refueling System Overview



E267248

A Fuel filler door.
B Fuel tank filler valve.
C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



E206911

A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle

WARNINGS

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

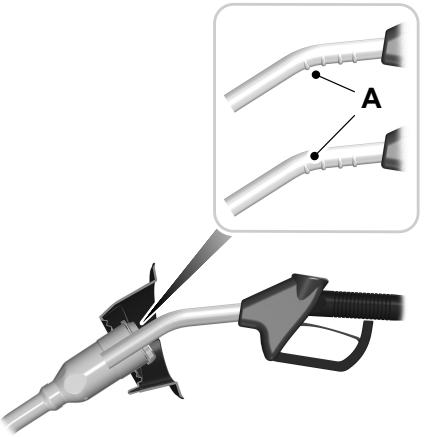
Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

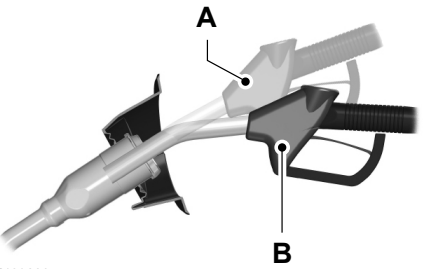
Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



E139202

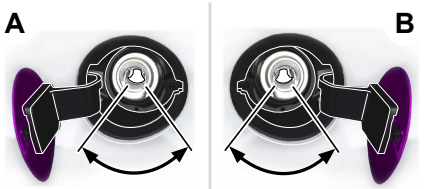
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



E139203

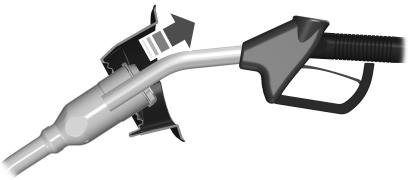
4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E206912

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message may appear in the information display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 130). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

If this action corrects the problem the message may not immediately reset. If the message remains and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page 95).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The first 1,000 mi (1,500 km) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures.
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 129).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

EMISSION LAW

WARNING

Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.

Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

Note: *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

Note: *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNINGS

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNINGS

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 190).
- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 132).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

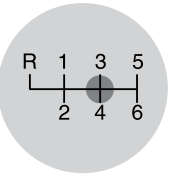
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (MMT6)

Using the Clutch

Note: *Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.*

Note: *Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.*



E144954

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start your vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; first (1) or reverse (R).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: *Do not downshift into first (1) when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.*

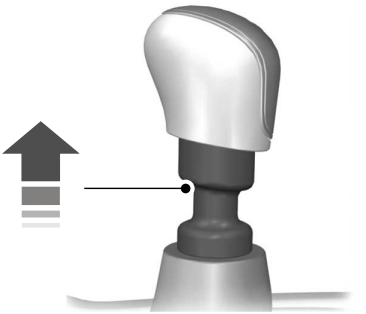
Recommended upshifts (for best fuel economy) when accelerating	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	26 mph (42 km/h)
3 - 4	38 mph (61 km/h)
4 - 5	42 mph (67 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

Reverse

Note: *Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into reverse (R). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.*

1. Press the clutch pedal to the floor to disengage clutch.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the neutral position.
3. Shift into reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up, then moving the lever fully to the left, then forward.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E99067

Note: *The gearshift lever can only be moved to reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up before shifting to reverse. This is a lockout feature which protects the transmission from accidentally engaging reverse (R) when intending to select first (1).*

If reverse (R) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then raise the collar and shift to reverse (R) again.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To park your vehicle:

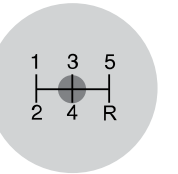
1. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Hold the clutch pedal down and shift the gearshift lever to first gear.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 5-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (MTX-75)

Using the Clutch

Note: *Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.*

Note: *Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.*



E157512

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

Starting Your Vehicle

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. Fully depress the clutch pedal then start the engine.
3. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to first or reverse gear.
4. Release the parking brake and slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, make sure you fully depress the clutch pedal.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: *Do not shift the gearshift lever to first gear when your vehicle is moving faster than 14 mph (23 km/h). This will damage the clutch.*

We recommend you change gear according to the following guide to achieve the best fuel economy for your vehicle.

Shift from	Recommended speed
1 - 2	14 mph (23 km/h)
2 - 3	24 mph (38 km/h)
3 - 4	32 mph (51 km/h)
4 - 5	44 mph (71 km/h)

Reverse

Note: *Do not shift the gearshift lever to reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal to disengage clutch.
2. Shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before moving it to reverse.

If reverse gear is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, depress the clutch again and shift the gearshift lever to reverse.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To park your vehicle:

1. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Hold the clutch pedal down, and shift the gearshift lever to first gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and latch the gearshift in park (P). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The PowerShift™ 6-speed, dual-clutch automatic transmission is designed to offer drivers both enhanced fuel efficiency and fun to drive performance. This transmission's dual-clutch technology uses electronically shifted clutches to operate two separate transmissions all in a small lightweight package.

Since the clutch and gear operation is derived from a manual transmission, the PowerShift automatic transmission will drive, sound, and feel similar to manual transmission minus the required user-inputs. For example, the transmission may exhibit mechanical noises, firm gear shifts and/or light clutch vibrations when accelerating slowly as the clutches automatically engage. These are all considered to be normal and expected driving characteristics.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).



E142628

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever:

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

If equipped with steering wheel paddles:

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



E144821

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

Note: *The system stays in manual control until you make another shift selection (for example, drive [D]).*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

When doing this procedure, you will be taking your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

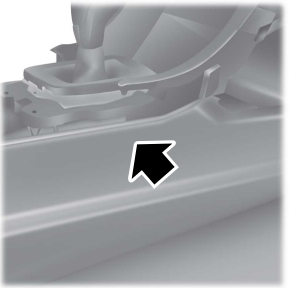
If you fully release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Note: *For some markets this feature will be disabled.*

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

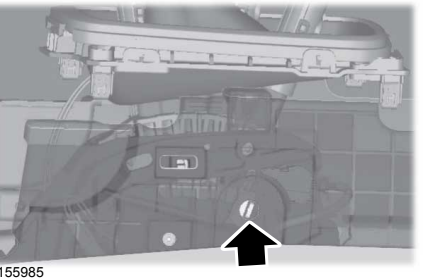
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 200).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):



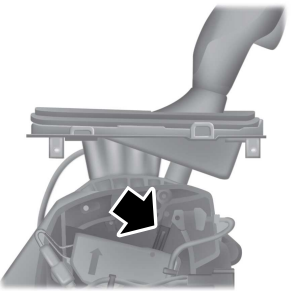
E155984

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.



E155985

2. Locate the access hole.



E155983

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever foreword while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 241).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps could flash during heavy braking. Following this, the hazard lights could also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event that the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow your vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you rapidly brake by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations

Anti-Lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

All Vehicles

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

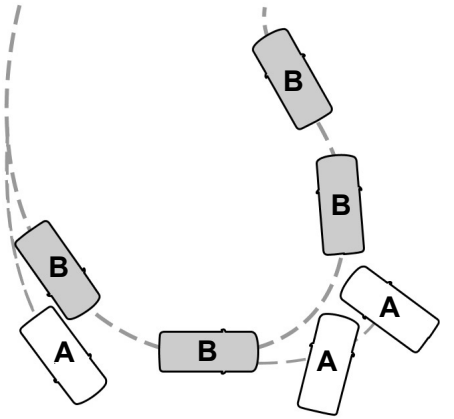
Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control system off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the system deactivates.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 150).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See* ***Principle of Operation*** *(page 55).*

Note: *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 92).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

REAR PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The rear parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R).

As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects an object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. If the system detects an approaching object the warning sounds again.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

FRONT PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The front parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R) or a forward gear.

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is below 7 mph (12 km/h).



E187330

Coverage area of up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front of the vehicle.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear of the vehicle.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 12 in (30 cm) from the front of the vehicle and, at the same time, an obstacle is only 6 in (15 cm) from the rear of the vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 12 in (30 cm).

The system provides warnings when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

Parallel Parking Assist

WARNINGS

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

Active park assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not detect traffic alongside or behind your vehicle during an Active Park Assist maneuver.*

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you when parking your vehicle.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system by grabbing the steering wheel or by pressing the active park assist button.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are improperly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space. For example, a pedestrian or cyclist.
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground. For example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck.
- The weather conditions are poor. For example, during heavy rain, snow or fog.

Note: *Keep the sensors on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves or cause ultrasonic interference. For example, motorcycle exhaust, truck air brakes or horns.*

Note: *Following a change in tire size, the system must recalibrate and operation may be impaired for a short time.*

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object close to the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, a bike rack or trailer.
- You attach an overhanging object to the roof. For example, a surfboard.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the front or rear bumper or side sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle. For example, a mini-spare tire.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

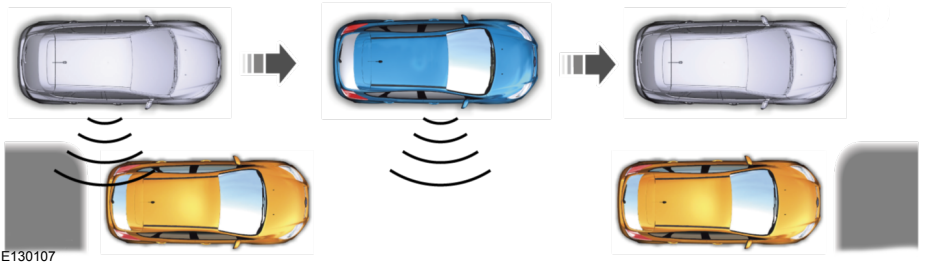
Using Active Park Assist - Parallel Parking



Press the Active Park Assist button once to search for a parallel parking space.

When driving at a speed less than 22 mph (35 km/h), the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: *If the direction indicators are not used, the system defaults to the passenger side of your vehicle.*



E130107

Note: *You can also switch the system on after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. Press the Active Park Assist button and the system informs you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.*

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the space the system selects remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *Drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) and as parallel as possible to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.*

Note: *The system always offers the last parking space it detects. For example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one.*

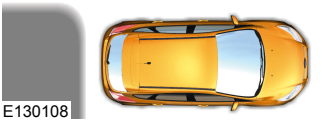
Note: *If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

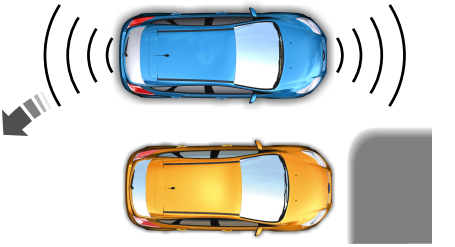
Automatically Steering into a Parking Space

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (9 km/h) or you interrupt the maneuver, the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the steering wheel and nothing obstructing its movement, your vehicle steers itself into the space (hands-free). The system displays instructions to move your vehicle backward and forward in the space.


E130108



When you believe your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone accompanied by a display message, bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When the Active Park Assist maneuver is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds.

Note: *You are responsible for checking your parked vehicle and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.*

Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature

You can manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the Active Park Assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds while searching for a parking space.
- Driving above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) during an active maneuver.
- Switching the traction control system off.

Certain vehicle conditions may also deactivate the system, for example:

- The traction control system activates.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays accompanied by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Troubleshooting the System

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not look for a space.	You may have the traction control system switched off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be covered. For example, snow, ice or dirt buildup. Covered sensors can affect how the system functions.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 5 ft (1.5 m) or less than 16 in (0.4 m) away.
	Your vehicle speed is greater than 22 mph (35 km/h).
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After a battery disconnect, you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not position the vehicle correctly.	Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the current transmission position. For example, rolling forward when in reverse (R).
	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.
	Improperly parked vehicles or objects are boarding the space.
	Your vehicle is too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.
	You have incorrectly installed or maintained the tires. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Symptom	Possible Cause
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

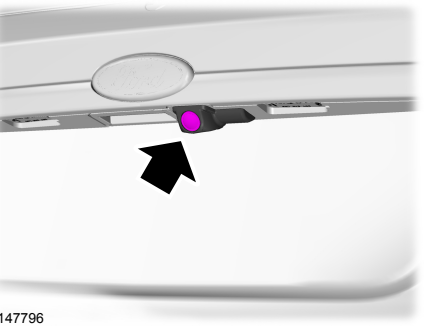
Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E147796

The camera is on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

Note: *The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:*

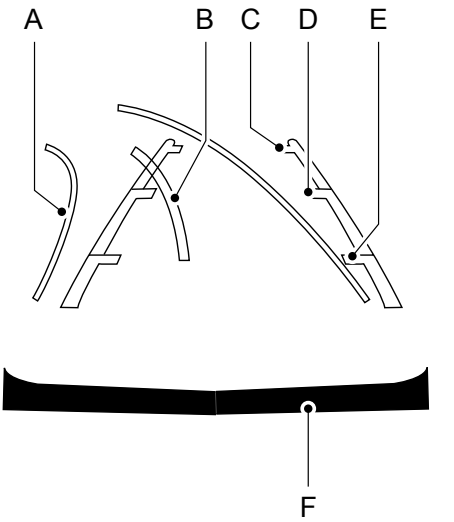
- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Access the rear view camera system settings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

After changing a system setting, the display screen shows a preview of the selected features.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Dynamic guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines are not shown when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the exterior mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.*

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission is shifted out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are + and -. The default setting for the manual zoom is OFF.

Rear Camera Delay (If Equipped)

When you shift the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear while the rear camera delay is active, the camera image displays until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

Enhanced Park Aids

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

When the sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image. The alert highlights all objects detected.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

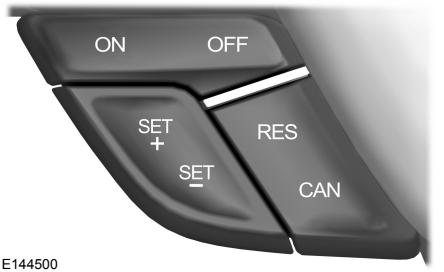
USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Note: *Cruise control disengages if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed when driving uphill.*



E144500

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.



The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Changing the Set Speed

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

- Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the Information display the set speed changes in approximately 2 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release ***SET+***.
- Press and hold ***SET+*** or ***SET-***. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release ***CAN*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

DRIVER ALERT

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

Note: *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

Using Driver Alert

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

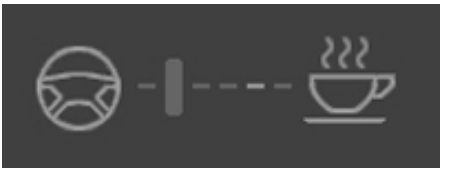
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

System Display

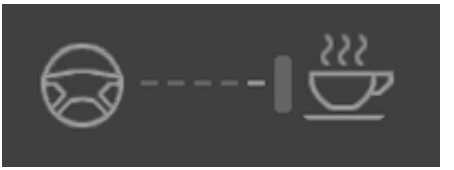
When active the system runs automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar travels from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached, the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in gray if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The sensor is located near the rear view mirror.

Note: *The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

Note: *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.*

Note: *If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.*

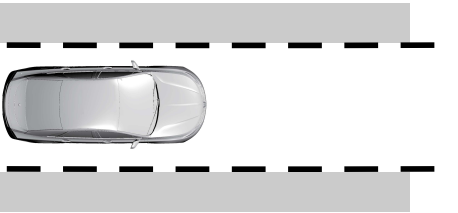


Press the button on the steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

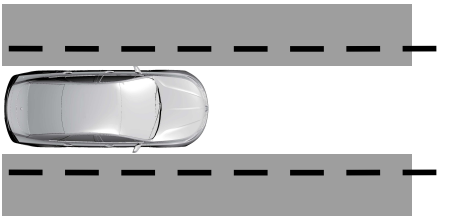
The system has optional setting menus available. The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



E165515

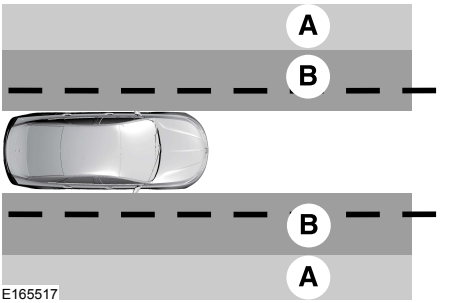
Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



A Alert

B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

System Display



When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

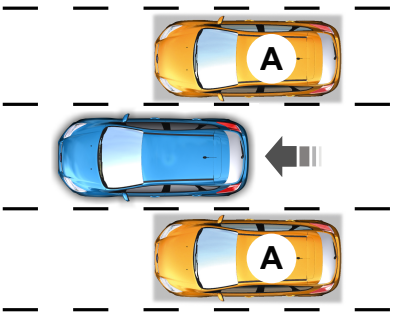
Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



E124788

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper.

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Using the Blind Spot Information System

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

System Lights and Messages

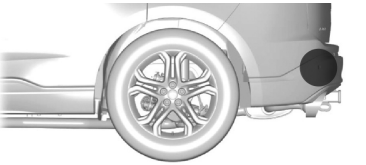


E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Switching the System Off and On

You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

WARNINGS

Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNINGS

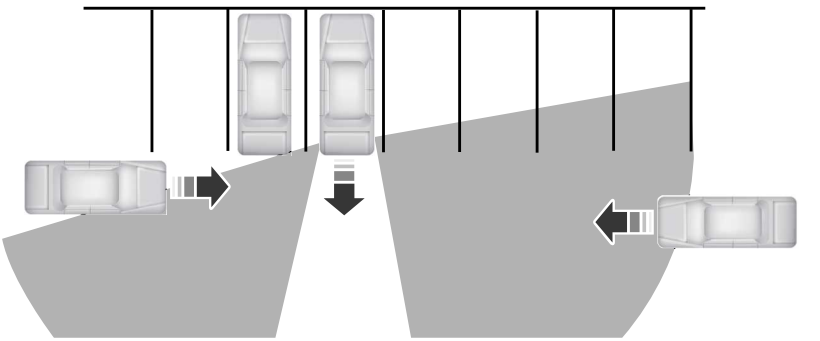
The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides when you shift into reverse (R).

Using the Cross Traffic Alert System

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

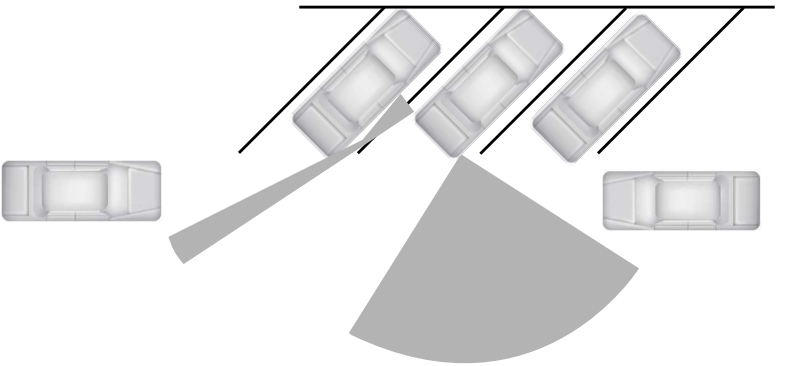
The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



E142440

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts

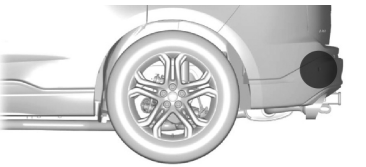


E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing in the distance.*

Blocked Sensors



E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R). See **Information Messages** (page 96).

System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

System Errors

If the system detects a fault a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the system off using the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96). When you switch system off, a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Note: *The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on and you shift into reverse (R). If you temporarily switch the system off, it turns on the next time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your vehicle's overall fuel economy.

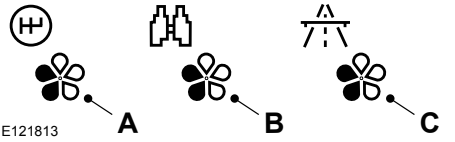
Note: *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

Note: *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 92).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Type 1



A Gear shifting
B Anticipation
C Efficient speed

Gear shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions to improve fuel consumption.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

Note: *New values may take a short time to calculate*

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

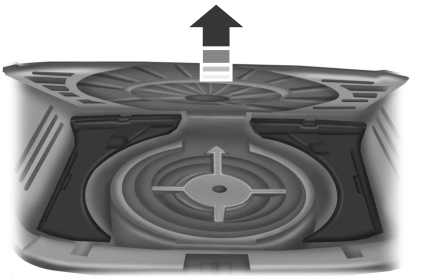
Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

LUGGAGE COVERS

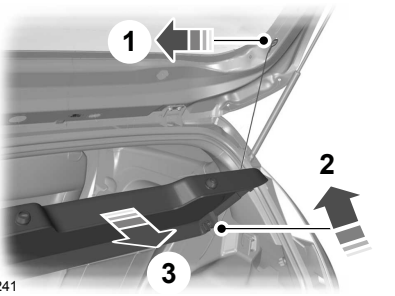
WARNINGS

Make sure that the posts are properly latched in the mounting features. The luggage cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or crash if it is not securely installed.

Do not place any objects on the luggage cover. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or crash.

You can remove the luggage cover to load tall items in the cargo area.

Removing the Cover



E174241

Note: *You must repeat the steps on both sides of your vehicle.*

1. Open the liftgate and disconnect the tether by pulling it out.
2. Rotate the luggage cover upward.
3. Tap the bottom of the luggage cover upward near the pivot rod.

Reverse the steps to install the luggage cover.

LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL : 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants, and cargo should never exceed: 385 kg or 850 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

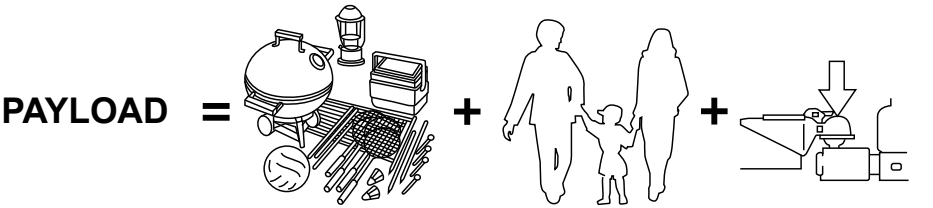
SEATING CAPACITY *NOMBRE DE PLACES* TOTAL 5 FRONT *AVANT* 2 REAR *ARRIÈRE* 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 396 kg or 875 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 396 kg ou 875 lb.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
REAR ARRIÈRE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

E198719

Payload



E143816

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

WARNING

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

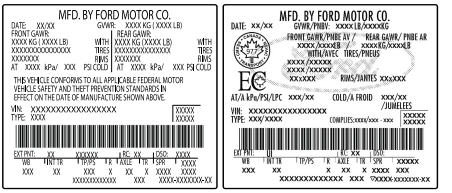
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E198828

WARNING

Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

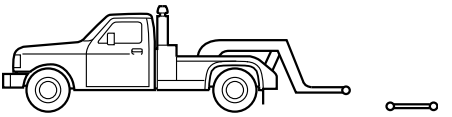
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

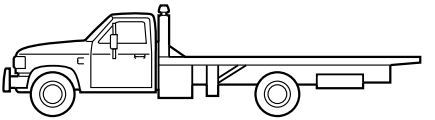
TOWING A TRAILER

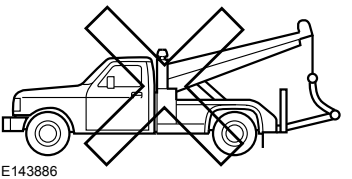
WARNING

Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. If the vehicle is towed incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

You can tow your vehicle from the front with wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. We recommend that you place the rear wheels on a dolly to prevent damage to the rear of your vehicle.

You can tow your vehicle from the rear with wheel lift equipment.

Note: *You must place the front wheels on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 104).*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider. If you tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground, follow these instructions:

1. Tow only with your vehicle in the forward direction. Release the parking brake.
2. Place the transmission in neutral.

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You place the transmission in neutral (N). If you cannot place the transmission in neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 140).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

WARNING

Your vehicle is not approved for recreational towing with all four wheels on the ground.

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

Your vehicle can be towed with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 2.0L, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You place the transmission in neutral (N). If you cannot place the transmission in neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 140).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 104).*

Note: *There must be battery power to move the transmission's internal components to neutral (N) properly in Step 3. In addition, moving the gearshift to the neutral (N) position without first switching the ignition to the on position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 mi (80 km).*

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Switch the ignition to the on position.
3. Press the brake pedal, and then move the gearshift to the neutral (N) position.
4. Wait for a message in the information and entertainment display indicating that the transmission is ready, and then switch off the ignition and release the brake pedal.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

Note: *There is no limit on towing distance.*

After towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 104).*

Note: *There must be battery power to move the transmission's internal components to neutral (N) properly in Step 3. In addition, moving the gearshift to the neutral (N) position without first switching the ignition to the on position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 mi (80 km).*

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the keyless start button, but do not apply the brake pedal.
3. Press the brake pedal, and then move the gearshift to the neutral (N) position. Release the brake pedal.
4. Wait for a message indicating that the transmission is ready in the information and entertainment display, and then switch off the ignition by pressing the keyless start button.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. You need the door key to lock and unlock doors when the battery cable is disconnected. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *There is no limit on towing distance.*

After towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 mi (480 km). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13ºF (-25ºC).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

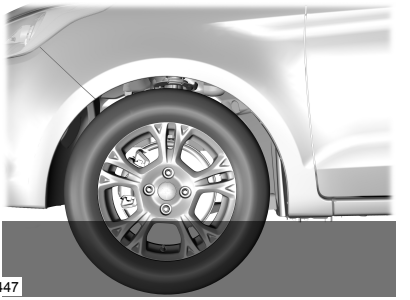
Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.


E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNINGS

Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

If you require more information, please refer to the coverage section of your warranty guide, call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Turn all accessories off.

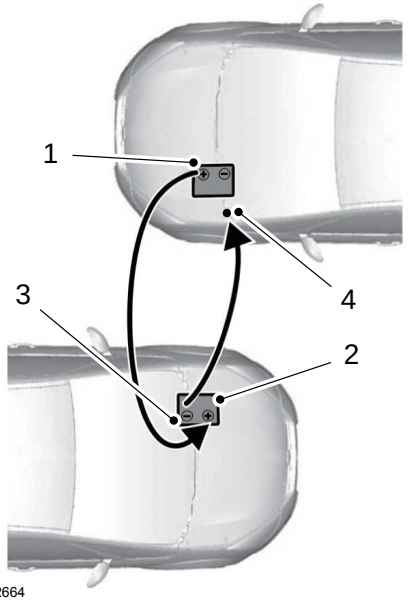
Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables. Battery positions may vary.

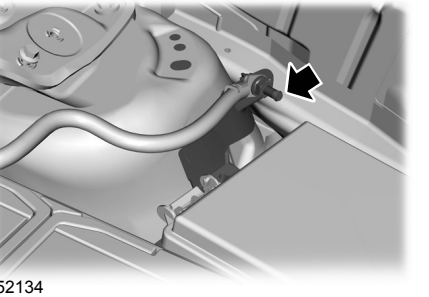
Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



E152134

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point, if available.

WARNING

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

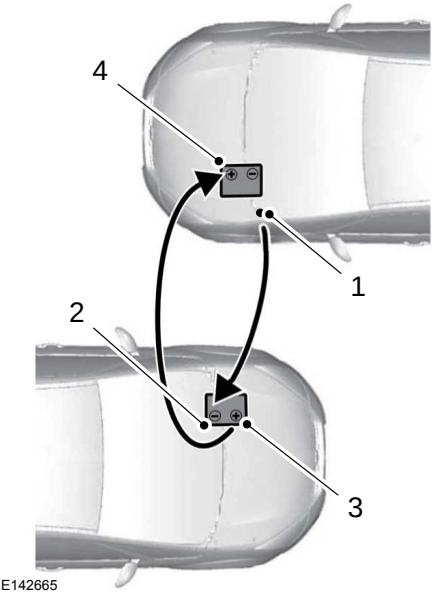
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. After starting the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After starting your disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow your vehicle to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The horn and indicators turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.
- Sounding of the horn is only enabled in specific markets.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
www.owner.ford.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
www.ford.ca

Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY

Customer Relationship Centers in:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1 313 594 4857	-	expcac@ford.com
Middle East	Ford 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441067		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	prcac@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	+1-313-594-4857	N/A	ssacrc@ford.com
South Korea	+82-02-1600-6003	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, expcso@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

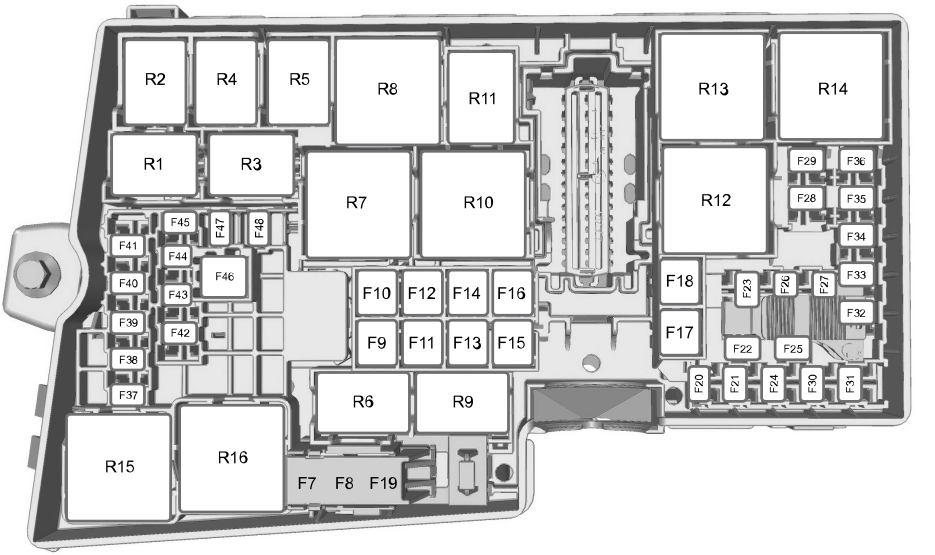
Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/reporting-defects-motor-vehicles.html (English)
Website	http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/signaler-defauts-vehicules-automobiles.html (French)
Phone	1–800–333–0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.ford.ca
Phone	1–800–565-3673

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E266482

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F7	40 A	Anti-lock brake system. Traction control valve.
F8	30 A	Traction control valve.
F9	30 A	Heated rear window.
F10	40 A	Blower motor.
F11	30 A	Auto-start-stop.
F12	30 A	Powertrain control module relay.
F13	30 A	Starter motor.
F14	25 A	Rear power windows.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F15	25 A	Transmission control module. Cooling fan (1.0L EcoBoost).
F16	20 A	Battery monitoring sensor.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	20 A	Windshield wipers.
F19	5 A	Traction control module.
F20	15 A	Horn.
F21	5 A	Stoplamp switch.
F22	5 A	Parking assist control module.
F23	5 A	A/C compressor relay coils. Lighting control.
F24	5 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F25	10 A	Exterior mirrors.
F26	15 A	Transmission control module (2.0L GDI).
	20 A	Transmission control module (1.0L Ecoboost).
F27	15 A	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	5 A	Rear view camera.
F29	10 A	Auto-stop-start.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	5 A	Accessory delay.
F32	10 A	Powertrain control module. Crankshaft position sensor. Camshaft position sensor.
F33	15 A	Mass air flow sensor (2.0 GDI). Ignition coil (1.0L EcoBoost).
F34	10 A	Coolant pump. Evaporative emission canister purge valve. Sound symposer actuator valve. Turbocharger bypass valve. Wastegate control valve. Air conditioning compressor.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Oil pump. Turbocharger variable vane hydraulic control valve. Variable intake valve. Externally-controlled variable displacement compressor.
F35	10 A	Crankshaft position sensor. Heated oxygen sensor. Evaporative emission canister purge valve.
F36	5 A	Active grille shutter.
F37	15 A	Daytime running lamps. Headlamp control module.
F38	15 A	Transmission control module.
F39	15 A	Driver heated seat.
F40	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
F41	20 A	Body control module.
F42	15 A	Rear window wiper motor.
F43	15 A	Headlamps.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	15 A	Passenger heated seat.
F46	25 A	Power windows.
F47	7.5 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
F48	-	Not used.

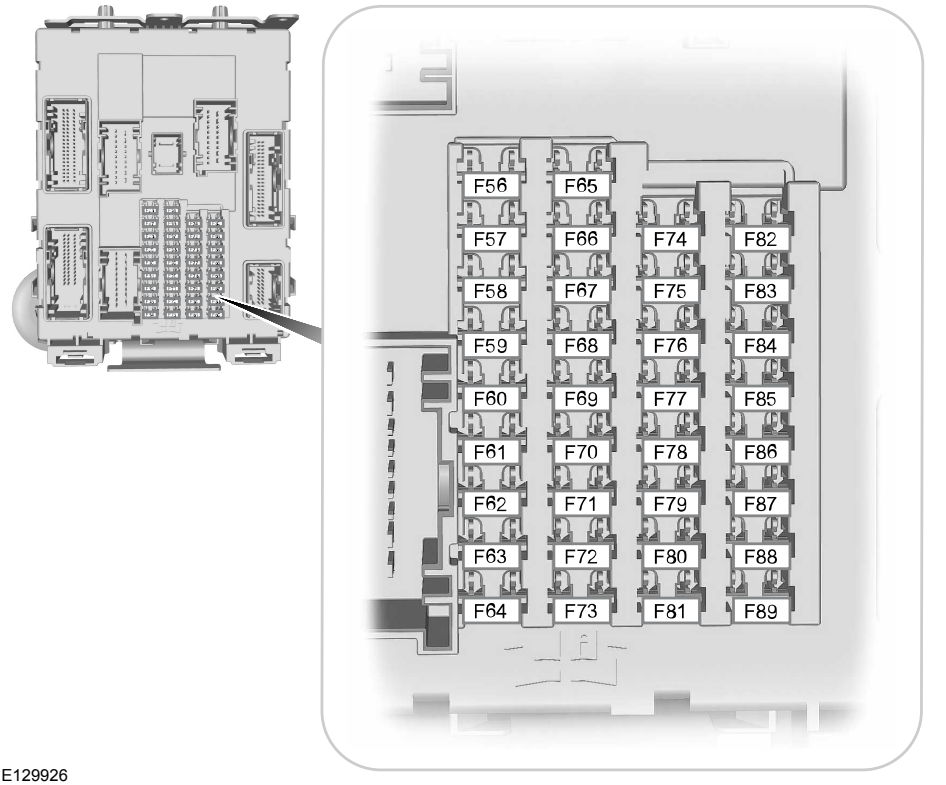
Relay Number	Circuits Switched
R1	Cooling fan.
R2	Horn.
R3	Heated windshield relay.
R4	Not used.
R5	Rear window wiper.
R6	Not used.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Relay Number	Circuits Switched
R7	Accessory delay.
R8	Accessory delay.
R9	Not used.
R10	Starter relay.
R11	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Cooling fan relay.
R13	Blower motor.
R14	Powertrain control module.
R15	Rear window defroster.
R16	Ignition.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E129926

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F56	20 A	Fuel pump.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	5 A	Not used (spare).
F59	5 A	Passive anti-theft system.
F60	10 A	Interior lamp. Ambient lighting module.

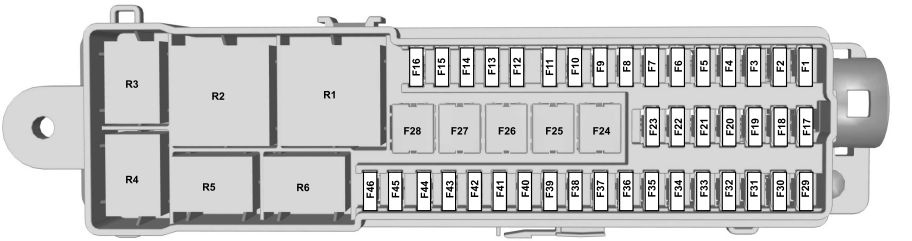
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Moonroof. left-hand front door module.
F61	20 A	Cigar lighter. Rear auxiliary power points.
F62	5 A	Not used (spare).
F63	10 A	Not used (spare).
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10 A	Liftgate release switch.
F66	20 A	Driver door lock.
F67	7.5 A	Information and entertainment display. Global positioning system module. SYNC module.
F68	-	Not used.
F69	5 A	Instrument cluster.
F70	20 A	Central locking system.
F71	7.5 A	Air conditioning control module.
F72	7.5 A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder. Secondary on-board diagnostic control module A.
F74	15 A	Headlamp high beam.
F75	15 A	Front fog lamps.
F76	10 A	Reversing lamp.
F77	20 A	Windshield washer pump. Rear window washer pump.
F78	5 A	Push button ignition switch.
F79	15 A	Audio unit. Hazard flasher switch. Power door locks.
F80	20 A	Moonroof.
F81	5 A	Radio frequency receiver.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F82	20 A	Windshield washer pump. Rear window washer pump.
F83	20 A	Tracking and blocking control module.
F84	20 A	Driver door unlock.
F85	7.5 A	Voltage quality monitoring. Air conditioning clutch. Front parking aid camera. Audio unit. Moonroof.
F86	10 A	Supplemental restraint system. Passenger sensing system.
F87	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
F88	-	Not used.
F89	-	Not used.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F1	-	Not used.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5 A	Remote keyless entry.

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F4	25 A	Left-hand front power windows. Central locking system. Left-hand heated exterior mirror.
F5	25 A	Right-hand front power windows. Central locking system. Right-hand heated exterior mirror.
F6	25 A	Left-hand rear-window power.
F7	25 A	Right-hand rear power windows.
F8	-	Not used.
F9	25 A	Driver power seat.
F10	25 A	Audio unit antenna amplifier.
F11	5 A	Remote keyless entry.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	-	Not used.
F14	-	Not used.
F15	-	Not used.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	-	Not used.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	-	Not used.
F27	-	Not used.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F28	-	Not used.
F29	-	Not used.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	-	Not used.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	-	Not used.
F35	-	Not used.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	-	Not used.
F46	-	Not used.

Relay Number	Circuits Switched
R1	Not used.
R2	Not used.
R3	Not used.
R4	Not used.
R5	Not used.
R6	Not used.

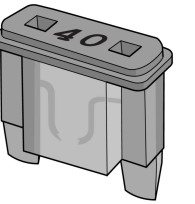
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

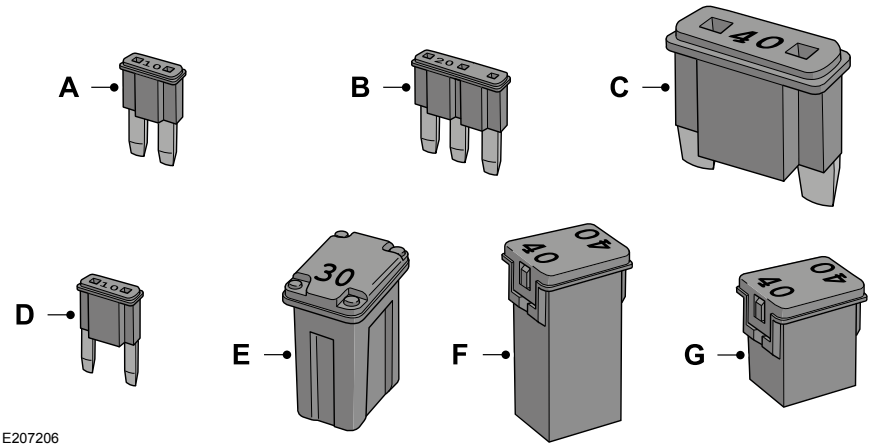
Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Callout	Fuse Type
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

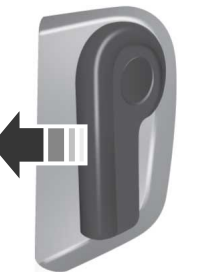
WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

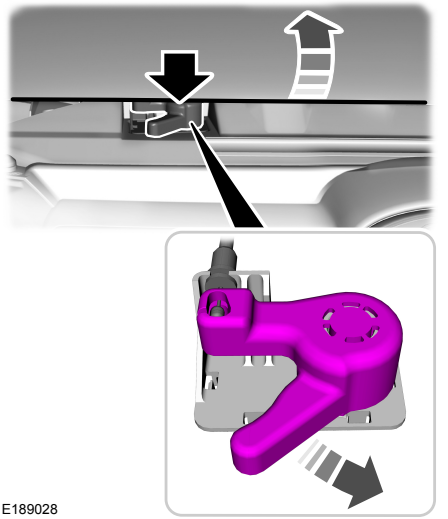
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142457

2. Go to the front of your vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front of the hood, left of center, and push it to your right-hand side to release.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

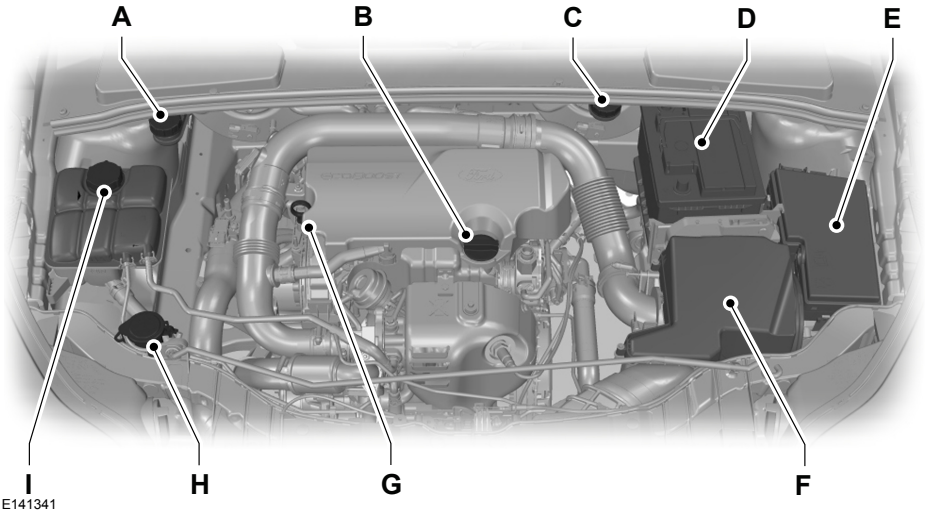


3. Lift the hood and support it with the prop rod.
4. To close the hood, remove the support rod from the catch and secure correctly.
5. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8 in to 12 in (20 cm to 30 cm).

Note: *Make sure the hood is fully closed.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 221).

B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 221).

D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).

E Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 200).

F Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 234).

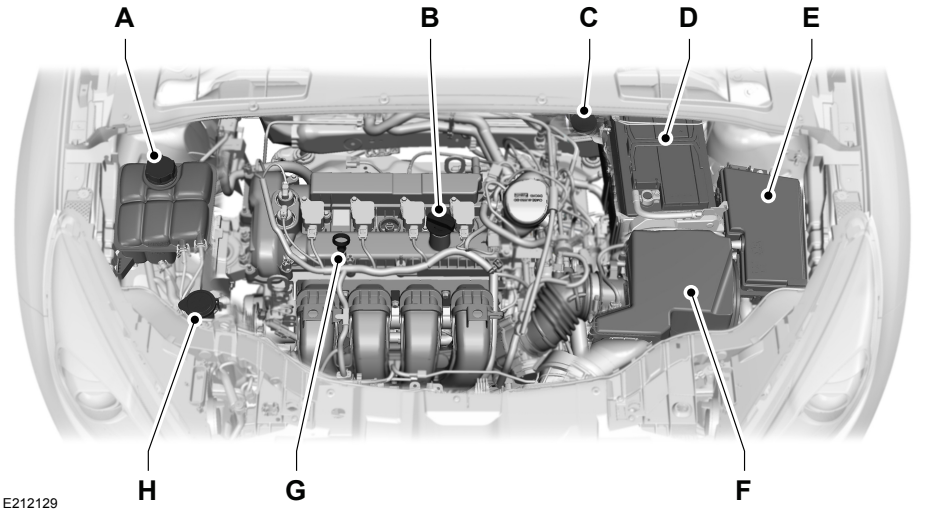
G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 215).

H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 217).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

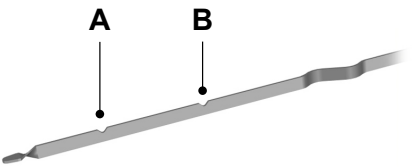
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 217).
B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).
C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Clutch Fluid Check** (page 221).
D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 222).
E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 200).
F Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 234).
G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).
H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 222).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

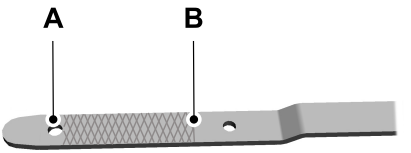
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L



E169062

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

WARNING

Do not work on a hot engine.

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, do the following:

1. Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
3. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
4. Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan. Checking the engine oil level too soon after you switch the engine off may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 211).
6. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 213).
7. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 215).
8. Make sure that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 274).
9. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.*

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 213). Turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 274). See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
4. Recheck the oil level.
5. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
6. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Make sure you install the oil filler cap correctly.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET (If Equipped)

Only reset the system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
2. Fully press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep the accelerator and brake pedals fully pressed.
4. After three seconds, a message appears confirming that the reset is in progress.
5. After 25 seconds, a message appears confirming that the reset is complete.
6. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. Switch the ignition off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN

WARNING

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 409).

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29ºF (-34ºC) and -35ºF (-37ºC). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS

Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 409). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNINGS

A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 221).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle has a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: *If your vehicle's battery has a cover or shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased. Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Fully press the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 281). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 82). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 281).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, press the accelerator pedal to start the engine.
7. While the engine is running, press the brake pedal and shift into neutral (N).
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive the vehicle at least 12 mi (20 km) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

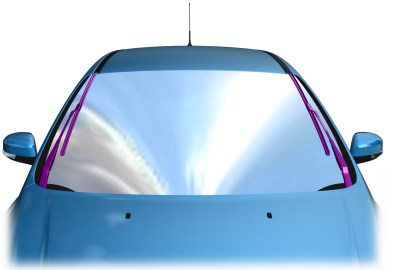
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Service Position

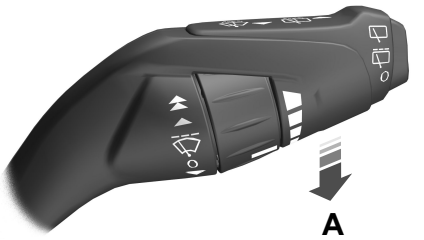


E75184

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

Note: *You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.*

1. Switch the ignition on.



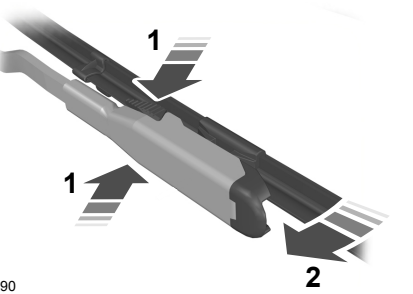
E129986

2. Switch the ignition off and press and hold the wiper lever in position A within three seconds.
3. Release the wiper lever when the windshield wipers reach the service position.

Note: *You can also move the wiper arms to the service position manually when the ignition is off. Do not move the wiper arms to the service position manually when the ignition is on. The wiper arms lock when you switch the ignition on.*

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*



E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

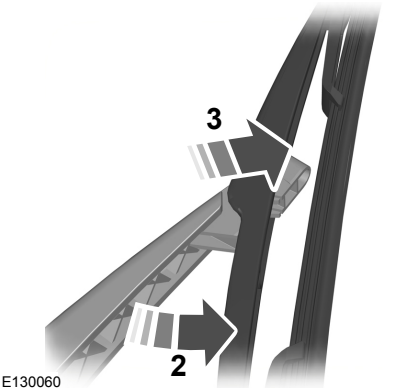
CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

1. Lift the wiper arm.



2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

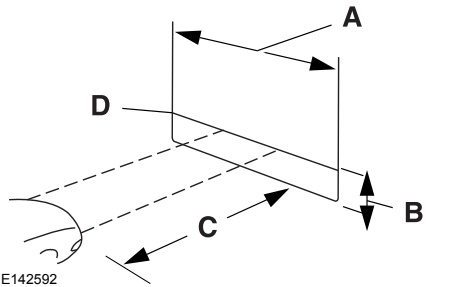
Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

Headlamp Aiming Target

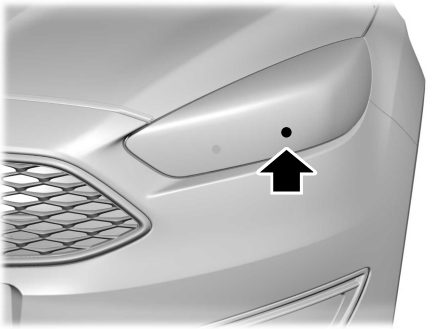


A	8 ft (2.4 m)
B	Ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb
C	25 ft (7.6 m)
D	Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure

1. Park your vehicle on level ground approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) from a wall or screen.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) long horizontal reference line on the wall or screen at this height.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

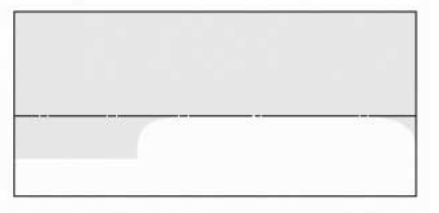


E199411

Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the bulb.*

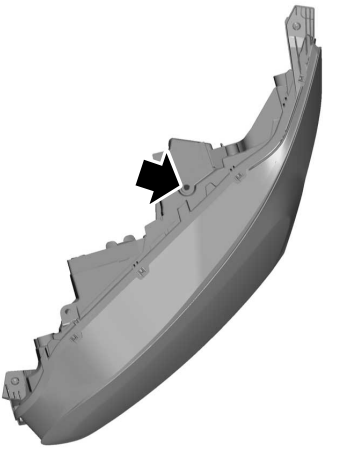
Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, you may want to block the light from the other headlamp.*

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the flat zone of high intensity light is not on the horizontal reference line, adjust the aim of the headlamp beam.



E164485

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or hexagonal socket, to turn the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

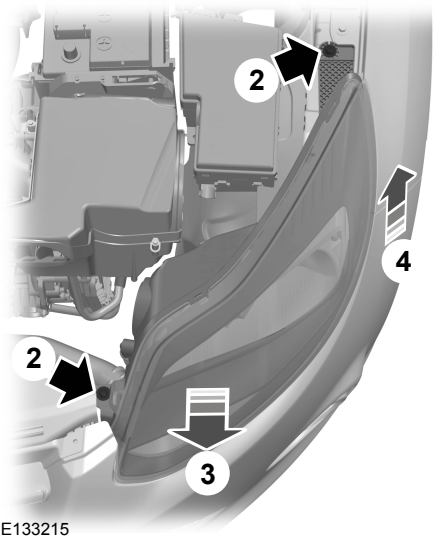
Horizontal Aim Adjustment

The horizontal aim of the headlamp beam on your vehicle is not adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

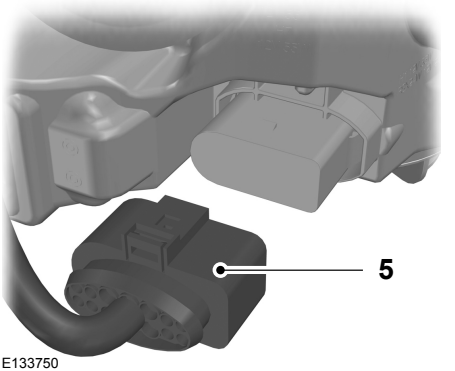
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 211).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E133215

2. Remove the screws.
3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



E133750

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

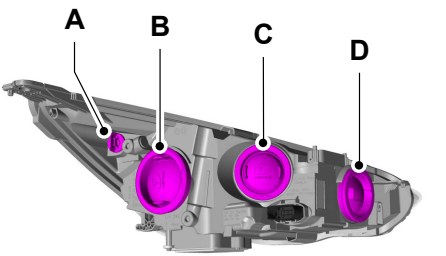
CHANGING A BULB

WARNING

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: *If you accidently touch the bulb, you should clean it with rubbing alcohol.*

Headlamp



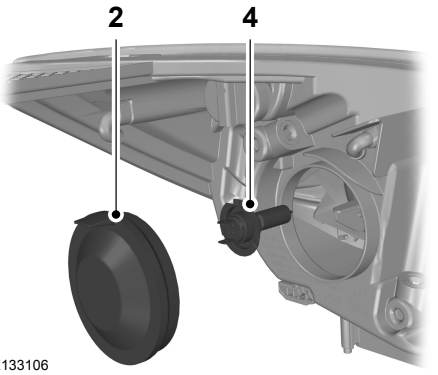
E184152

A. Side marker bulb.
B. Low beam headlamp bulb.
C. High beam headlamp bulb.
D. Direction indicator bulb. Cornering lamp bulb.

Headlamp Low Beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 226).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

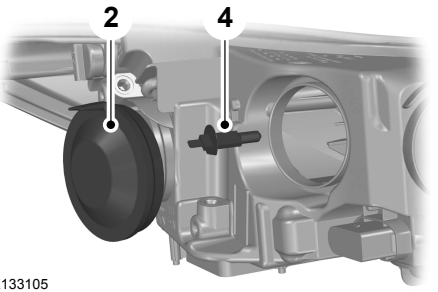


E133106

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 226).



E133105

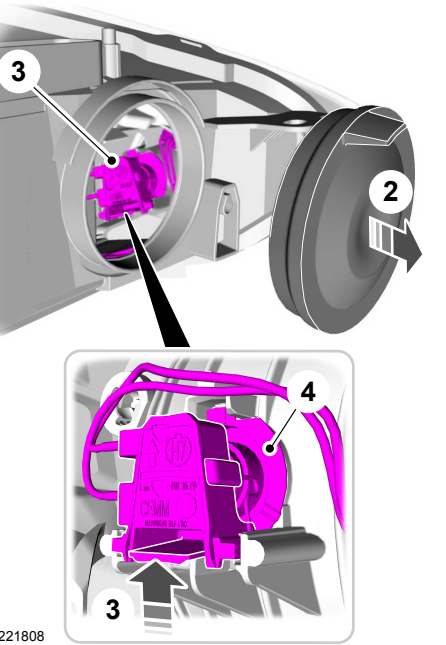
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

HID Headlamps

If your vehicle has high-intensity discharge headlamps, these lamps operate at a high voltage. Contact an authorized dealer.

Cornering Lamp (If Equipped)

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 226).



E221808

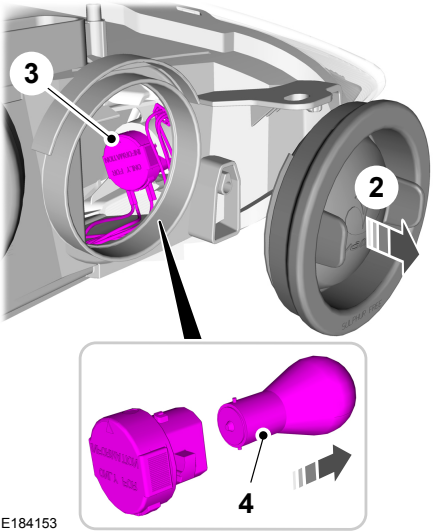
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Depress the clip to remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Front Direction Indicator

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 226).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

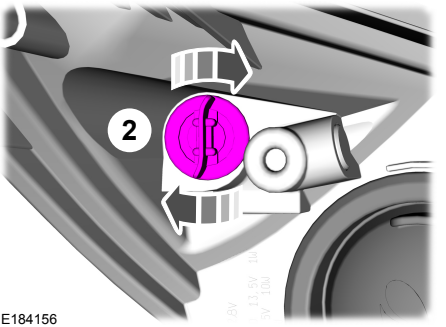


E184153

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Side Marker Bulb

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 226).

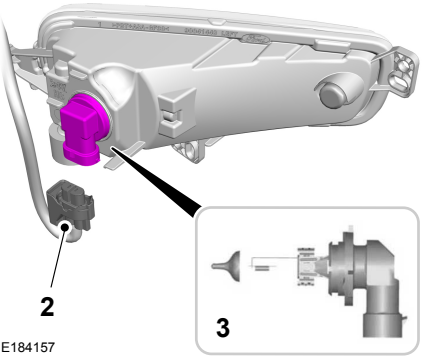


E184156

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Front Fog Lamp

1. Remove fog lamp grille from the front fascia then unscrew the fog lamp.



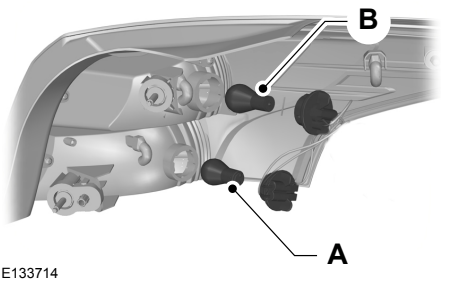
E184157

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

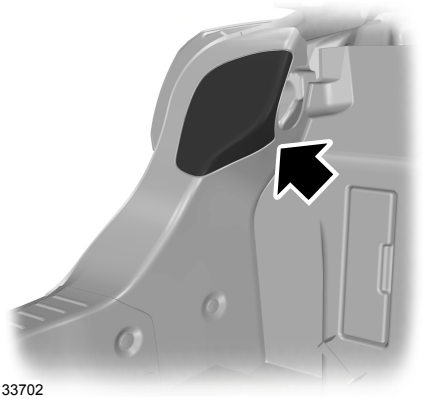
Rear Lamps - 4 Door



E133714

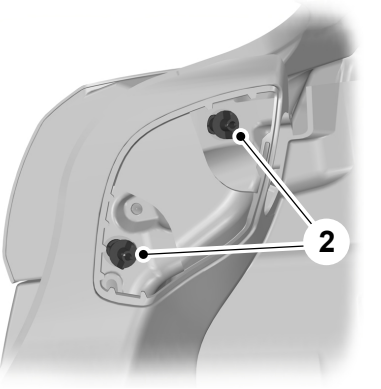
A. Direction indicator and rear lamp bulb.
B. Brake lamp bulb.

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



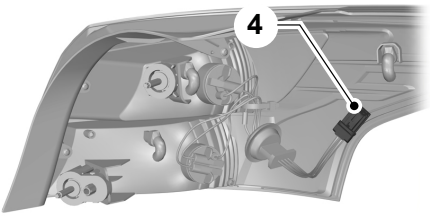
E133702

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E133703

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.

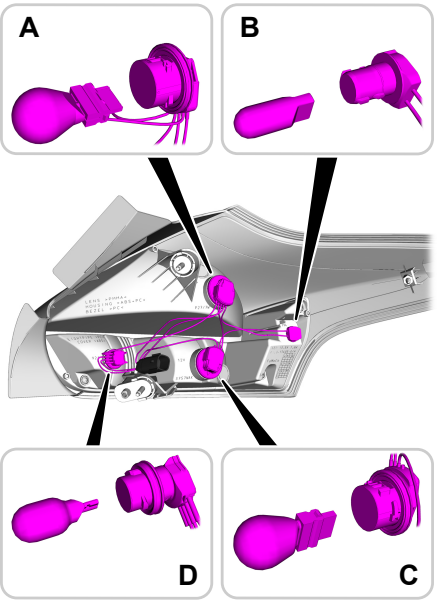


E133713

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

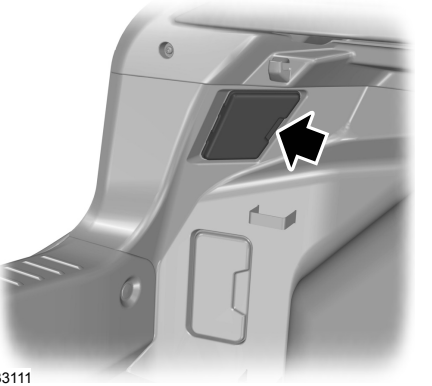
Rear Lamps - 5 Door



E184159

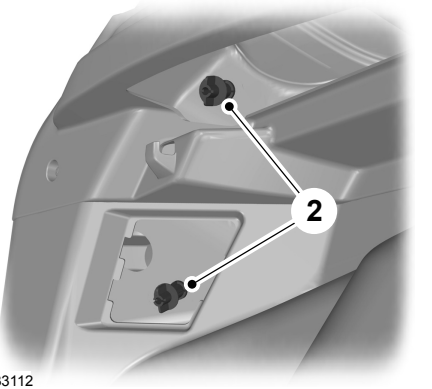
A. Brake and rear lamp bulb.
B. Side marker lamp bulb.
C. Direction indicator bulb.
D. Reverse lamp bulb.

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



E133111

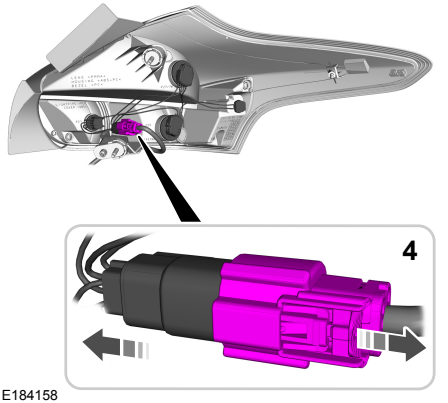
1. Carefully remove the cover.



E133112

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E184158

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

LED Rear Lamps (If Equipped)

These lamps have LED bulbs. Contact an authorized dealer.

Replacing Licence Plate and High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs

These lamps have LED bulbs. Contact an authorized dealer.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	H1LL
* Headlamps high beam (HID)	D3S
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H11LL
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D3S
Daytime running lamps	H1LL
* Daytime running lamps (High series)	LED
Park lamp - front	193
* Park lamp - front (High series)	LED
Direction indicator - front	WY21W
Direction indicator - front (High series)	PY21W
Fog lamps	H8
Sidemarker - front	WY5W

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Function	Trade number
Direction indicator - rear (4-door)	P27/7W
Direction indicator - rear (5-door)	3757 NAK
Rear and brake lamps	P27/7W
Rear lamps (4-door)	194
* Rear lamp (5-door high series)	LED
Sidemarker - rear (5-door)	194
* Sidemarker - rear (High series)	LED
Backup lamp	921
* License plate lamp	LED
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED

* To replace these lamps, contact an authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lights, contact an authorized dealer.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

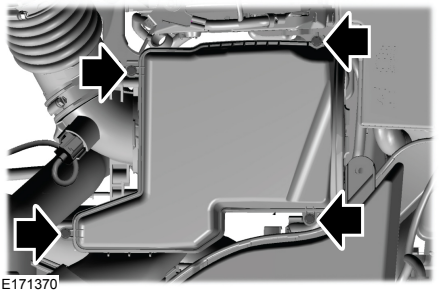
To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed in the Motorcraft Parts table. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 271).

When servicing the air cleaner on vehicles with a turbocharger, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

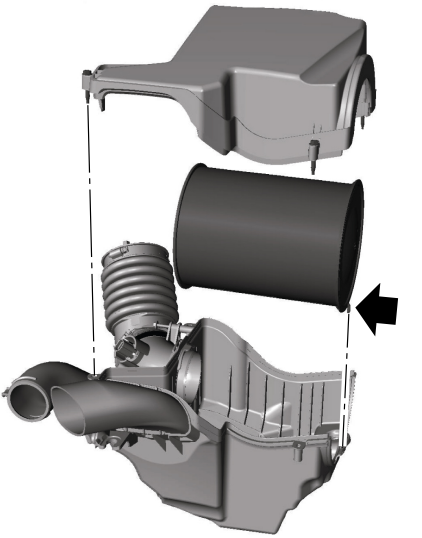
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 409).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*



E171370

1. Loosen the four fasteners and remove the air cleaner assembly lid.
2. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
3. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air cleaner assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



E170433

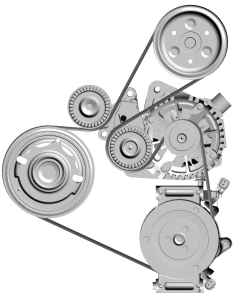
4. Install the new air filter element. Slide the open end of the air filter element in first, below the tab. Then push the closed end of the air filter into the bottom of the tray. The closed end should fit inside the groove in the tray. The tab of the closed end of the air filter should be oriented down and fit between the forks on the tray as shown at the arrow above.

Note: *Make sure you align the tab in the air filter element with the fork in the air cleaner assembly tray.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

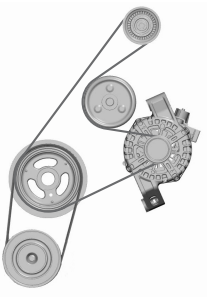
5. Install the air cleaner assembly lid and tighten the four fasteners.

DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E163197

DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 2.0L



E189146

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover / Dissolvant de goudron et éliminateur d'insectes Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-42 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner / Nettoyant pour métal brillant Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-15 *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Detail Wash / Shampooing superfin Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-3-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser Engine Shampoo and Degreaser ZC-20 *(U.S.)*	ESR-M14P3-A
Engine Shampoo Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo / Shampooing pour moteur Motorcraft® *(Canada)* CXC-66-A *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner / Nettoyant pour cuir et vinyle de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-56 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M99P43-B
Multi-Purpose Cleaner Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner / Nettoyant multi-usage Motorcraft® *(Canada)* CXC-101 *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner / Nettoyant professionnel pour sellerie et moquette Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-54 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover	-

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Name	Specification
Spot and Stain Remover ZC-14 *(U.S.)*	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner / Nettoie-vitres de qualité supérieure Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-23 *(U.S.)* CXC-100 *(Canada)*	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner / Nettoyant pour roues et pneus Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-37-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	-

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179ºF (82ºC).
- Use a spray with a 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90º angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

Underbody

Regularly clean the underside of your vehicle using water. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See* ***Cleaning Leather Seats*** *(page 240).*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS (If Equipped)

1. Regularly clean them with a wheel cleaner. We recommend that you use Ford approved wheel cleaner if available.
2. Remove dirt and brake dust with a sponge.
3. Remove tar and grease with a bug and tar remover. We recommend that you use Ford approved bug and tar remover if available.
4. Thoroughly rinse the wheels with water after cleaning.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminates which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

TIRE CARE

Important Information for 235/40R18 Low-Profile Tires and Wheels

If your vehicle is equipped with 235/40R18 tires, they are low-profile tires. These tires and wheels are designed to give your vehicle a sport appearance. With low-profile tires, you may notice an increase in road noise and faster tire wear, depending on road conditions and driving styles. Due to their design, low-profile tires and wheels are more prone to road damage from potholes, rough or unpaved roads, car wash rails and curb contact than standard tires and wheels.

Note: *Your vehicle's warranty does not cover these types of damage. Tires should always be kept at the correct inflation pressures and extra caution should be taken when operating on rough roads to avoid impacts that could cause wheel and tire damage.*

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 ©)(2).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Tire label: A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

Inflation pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

Standard load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi (2.41 bar)[36 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

Extra load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

PSI: Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

Cold tire pressure: The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

Recommended inflation pressure: The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

Bead area of the tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.

Sidewall of the tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.

Tread area of the tire: Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

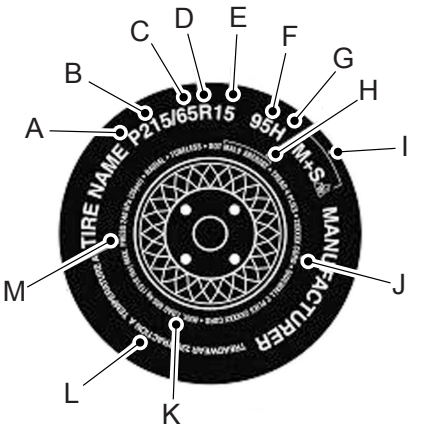
Rim: The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter, this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

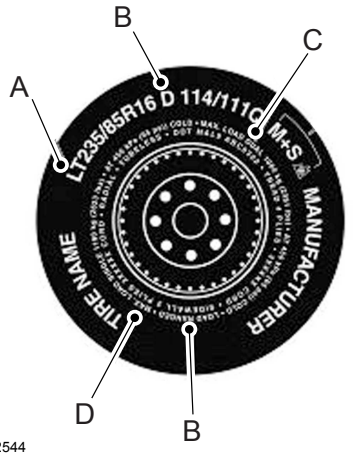
***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

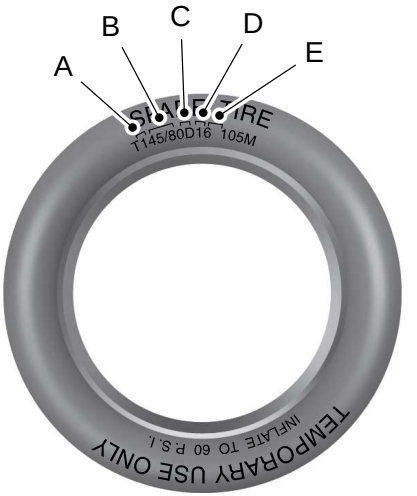
Information on T Type Tires

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E142545

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers], never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type mini-spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

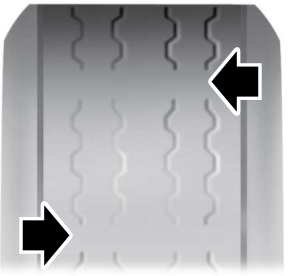
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a United States DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

WARNINGS

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

Observe posted speed limits.

Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.

Avoid potholes and objects on the road.

Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage.

If a tire is under-inflated, check the tire for damage. If the tire is not damaged inflate it to the recommended tire pressure.

If a tire is damaged, have it replaced immediately. If your vehicle has a spare wheel, fit the spare wheel immediately and have the damaged tire replaced as soon as possible. If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel, have your vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the tire replaced.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

WARNING

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

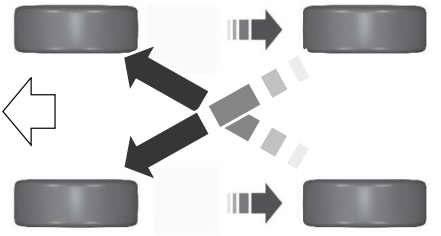
Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING

Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires or snow chains.

If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be installed on all four wheels and they must be the same size, load index and speed rating as the original tires listed on the tire inflation pressure label. The label is on the on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door . Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

If you use snow chains, we recommend that steel wheels of the same size and specifications are used. Snow chains may damage aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow chains:

- Avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Only use small link snow chains of approximately 10mm with 215/55R16 tires only.
- Only use small link snow chains of approximately 15mm with 195/65R15 tires only.
- Only use snow chains on the tire sizes listed above.
- Snow chains must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Install snow chains securely, make sure they do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Remove snow chains when they are no longer required.
- Do not use snow chains on dry roads.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.*

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30ºF (17ºC) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS

Do not use tire sealants as they may damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the system sensors See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 260). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNINGS

Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.

When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNINGS

Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P).

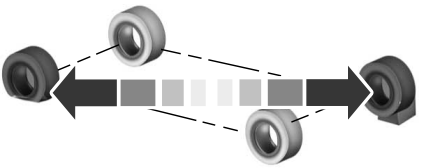
To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications. If you are unsure if the jack capacity is adequate, contact the authorized dealer.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) (manual transmission) and turn the engine off.
3. Remove the carpeted wheel cover.
4. Remove the spare tire bolt securing the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire from the spare tire compartment
6. Remove the retaining bolt securing the jack by turning it counterclockwise.
7. Remove the jack.



E142551

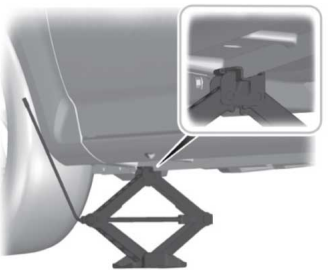
8. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
9. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.
10. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack. **Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.



E145908

11. Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



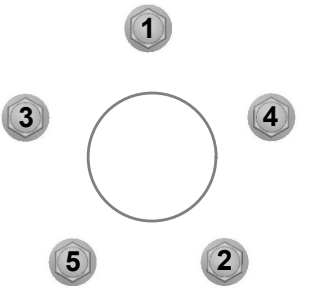
E142553

12. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.



E145950

13. Inspect the wheel pilot bore (**A**) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.
14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 267).
17. Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance. For example tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

Stowing the Flat Tire

The full-size road wheel can be stowed in the spare tire compartment.

1. Lift the carpeted wheel cover at an angle to access the spare tire compartment.
2. Place the wheel in the spare tire well with the valve stem facing down. Use the mini-spare bolt to secure the wheel.
3. Place the jack and tools back into the spare tire compartment.
4. Replace the carpeted wheel cover.

DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

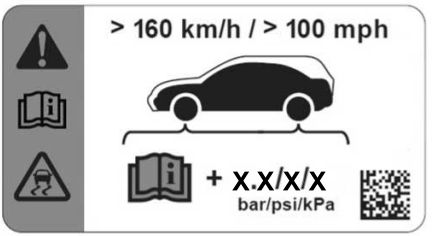
Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

WARNING

To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death, increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label, located on either the driver side B-pillar or door, when driving over 100 mph (160 km/h). Only travel at speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.

Warning: Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.



E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h). If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

LUG NUTS

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)
M12 x 1.5	100 (135)

Note: *Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine	1.0L EcoBoost
Cubic inches	61
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-2-3
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.026 – 0.030 in. (0.65 – 0.75 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

Engine	2.0L GDI
Cubic inches	121
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane or E85
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.034 - .036 in. (.85 - .95 mm)
Compression ratio	12.0:1

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BAGM-48H6-760
Spark plugs	SP-538A
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2802 (driver side) WW-2803 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1295

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 409).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery - vehicles with manual transmissions	BXT-96R-500
Battery - vehicles with automatic transmissions	BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs	SP-535
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2802 (driver side) WW-2803 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1295

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

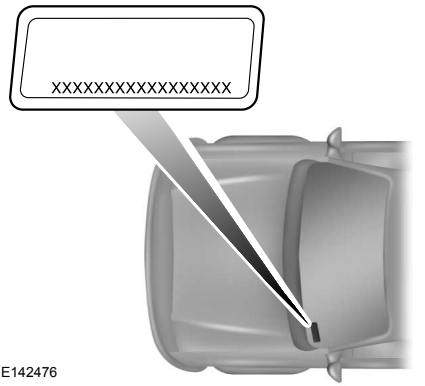
If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 409).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

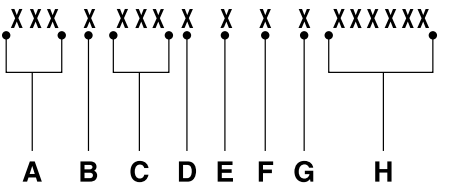
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:

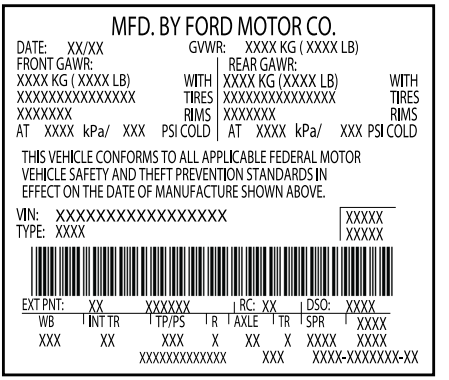


E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

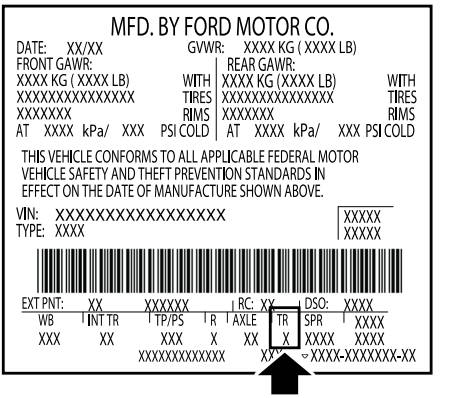
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Type	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission.	DPS6	W
Six-speed automatic transmission.	6F15	7
Five-speed manual transmission.	MTX75	RP
Six-speed manual transmission.	B6	BT
Six-speed manual transmission.	MMT6	VT

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Quantity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.2 gal (4.6 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.2 gal (4.4 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	2.2 gal (8.5 L)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 gal (1.67 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	2.3 gal (8.6 L)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	12.4 gal (47 L)
Washer system fill capacity.	0.7 gal (2.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity.	20.8 oz (0.59 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity.	7.0 fl oz (207 ml)

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.7 qt (0.7 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

We recommend that you use Motorcraft oil and fluids for your vehicle. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Using other fluids could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W20-QSP *(U.S.)* CXO-5W20-LSP12 *(Canada)*	WSS-M2C945-A
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil *(U.S.)*	WSS-M2C945-A

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil / Huile moteur synthétique SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W20-QFS *(U.S.)* CXO-5W20-LFS6 *(Canada)*	
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® *(Canada)* VC-3DIL-B *(U.S.)* CVC-3DIL-B *(Canada)*	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* PM-20 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîtes embrayage double Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-11-QDC *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C200-D2
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-10-QLVC *(U.S.)* CXT-10-LV12 *(Canada)*	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
R-1234yf Refrigerant *(U.S.)* R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf *(Canada)* YN-33-A *(U.S.)* HS7Z-19B519-BA *(Canada)*	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-35 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C300-A2
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray / Graisse tout usage en aérosol Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XL-5-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESB-M1C93-B
Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant *(U.S.)*	-

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Penetrating Fluid / Liquide dégrippant Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XL-1 *(U.S.)* CXC-51-A *(Canada)*	

Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® LV transmission fluid.*



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

Note: *Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

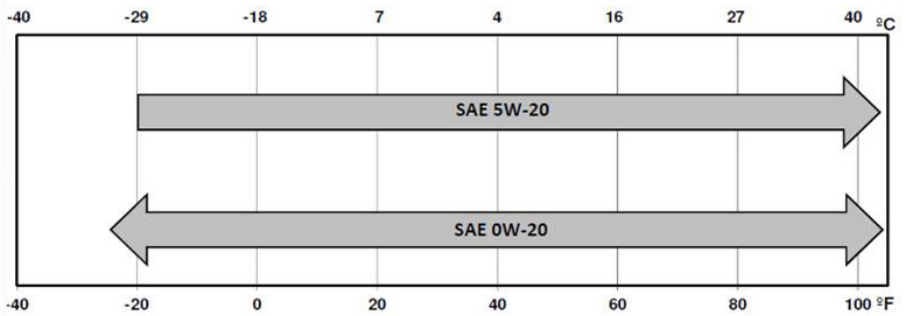
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil where the ambient temperature reaches -22°F (-30°C) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 XO-0W20-QSP *(U.S.)*	WSS-M2C947-A

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E240522

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Quantity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.1 gal (4.3 L)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.0 gal (3.9 L)
Engine coolant fill capacity.	2.2 gal (8.5 L)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 gal (1.67 L)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 gal (1.7 L)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	12.4 gal (47 L)

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Item	Quantity
Washer system fill capacity.	0.7 gal (2.5 L)
Air conditioning refrigerant fill capacity.	20.8 oz (0.59 kg)
Air conditioning refrigerant compressor oil fill capacity.	7.0 fl oz (207 ml)

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1.0 qt (0.95 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

We recommend that you use Motorcraft oil and fluids for your vehicle. Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Using other fluids could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W20-QSP *(U.S.)* CXO-5W20-LSP12 *(Canada)*	WSS-M2C945-A
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil / Huile moteur synthétique SAE 5W-20 Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XO-5W20-QFS *(U.S.)* CXO-5W20-LFS6 *(Canada)*	WSS-M2C945-A
Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué orange Motorcraft® *(Canada)* VC-3DIL-B *(U.S.)* CVC-3DIL-B *(Canada)*	WSS-M97B44-D2
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft® *(Canada)* PM-20 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M6C65-A2
Motorcraft® Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîtes embrayage double Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XT-11-QDC *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C200-D2
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)*	WSS-M14P19-A

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	
R-1234yf Refrigerant *(U.S.)* R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf *(Canada)* YN-33-A *(U.S.)* HS7Z-19B519-BA *(Canada)*	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft® *(Canada)* YN-35 *(U.S. & Canada)*	WSS-M2C300-A2
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray / Graisse tout usage en aérosol Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XL-5-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESB-M1C93-B
Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Penetrating Fluid / Liquide dégrippant Motorcraft® *(Canada)* XL-1 *(U.S.)* CXC-51-A *(Canada)*	-

Motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines are also acceptable. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® LV transmission fluid.*



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

Note: *Do not use more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

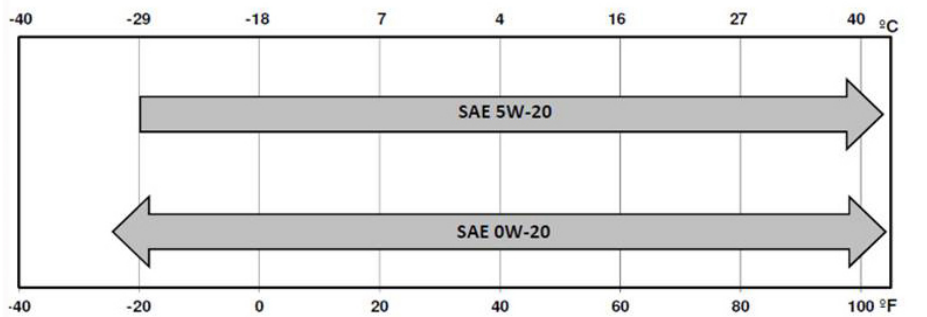
Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil where the ambient temperature reaches -22ºF (-30ºC) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 XO-0W20-QSP *(U.S.)*	WSS-M2C947-A



E240522

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530-1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.7 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

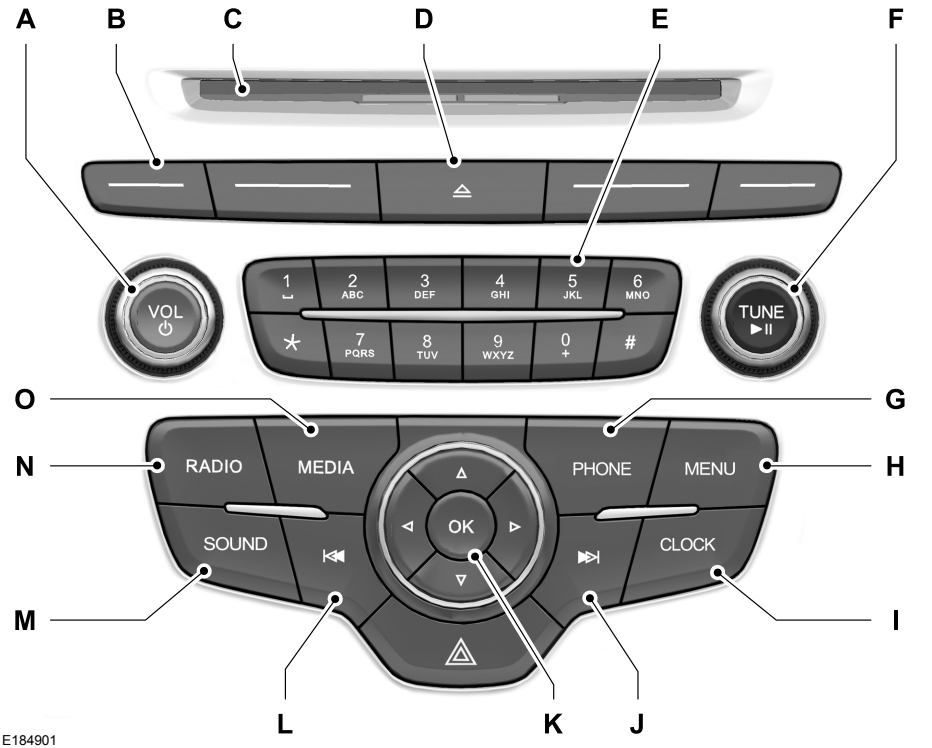
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



A **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn the control to adjust the volume.

B **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

D **Eject or Mute:** Press to eject a CD. Press to mute the audio source.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

F **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments. Press to mute the station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track. This button also mutes the radio sources.

G **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

H **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

I **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

J **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

K **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

L **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

M **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

N **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

O **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

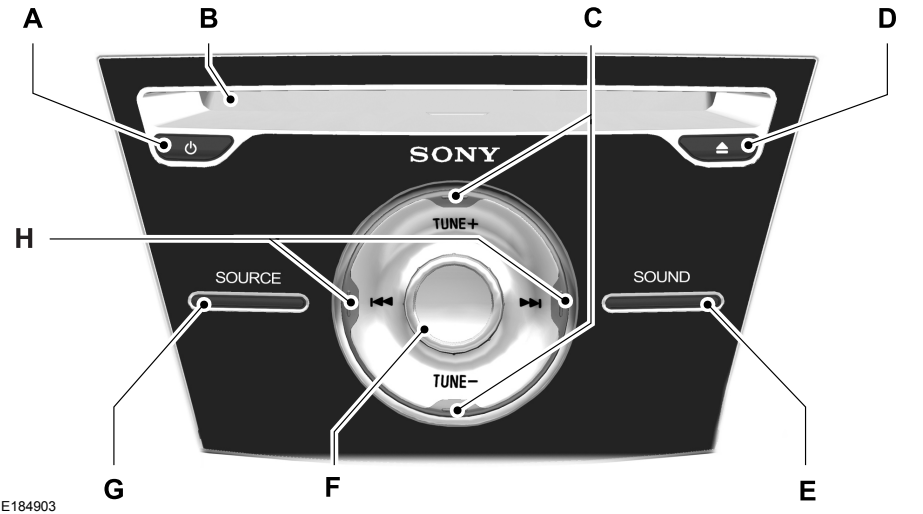
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your MyFord Touch information.*



A **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off.

B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

C **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band. In SIRIUS mode, press to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

D **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

E **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

F **Volume:** Turn to adjust the volume.

G **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

H **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous in the selected category. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

Menu Structure

Note: *Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.*

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

Radio	
Manual tune	Use the left and right arrows to go up or down the frequency band.
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Set PTY Category	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (such as Rock, Pop or Country).
RBDS/RDS	Select to view additional broadcast data (radio text), if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category, or display radio text and station names.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SIRIUS	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Show ESN	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You need this number when communicating with Sirius to activate, modify or track your account.
Channel Guide	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press **OK** to open a list of the following options for this channel: Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once you skip or lock a channel, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.
Set Sirius Category	Select to view channel categories (such as Pop, Rock or News). If you select a category, seek and scan functions only stop on channels in that category.
Alerts	Select to switch on or off alerts for songs, artists or teams. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
Unlock All Stations	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
Skip No Stations	Use to restore any channels you previously skipped.
Parental Lock (PIN)	Select to create a PIN, which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

Audio Settings	
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DSP	Choose between the stereo modes.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
CD Compression	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.

Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. Setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SATELLITE RADIO

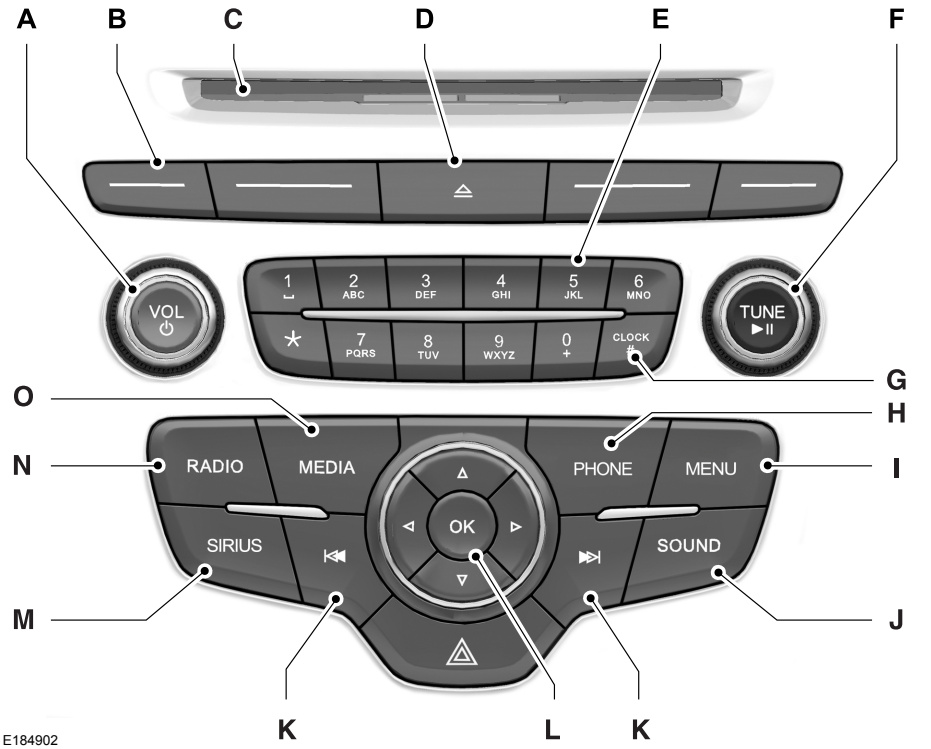
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Some features, such as SIRIUS satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



A **Vol and Power:** Turn to adjust the volume. Press to switch the system on and off.

B **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

D **Eject or Mute:** Press to eject a CD. Press to mute the audio source.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

F **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments. Press to mute the station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track. This button also mutes the radio sources.

G **Clock:** Press to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing **MENU** and scrolling to Clock Settings. If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

H **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

I **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure**.

J **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

K **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous station in the selected category. In CD mode, press to select the next or previous track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.

L **OK and cursor arrows:** Press the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set, or press **MENU** to exit.

M **SIRIUS:** Press to listen to SIRIUS satellite radio.

N **RADIO:** Press to listen to the radio or change radio stations. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select different radio functions.

O **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

DIGITAL RADIO

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or **Direct Tune**.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when **Scan** is pressed.	Pressing **Scan** disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

SATELLITE RADIO

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential satellite radio reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, tune to channel 0.

Troubleshooting

Message	Condition	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

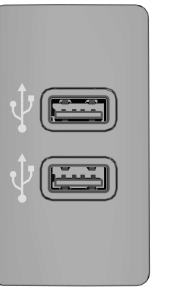
Message	Condition	Action
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found Check Channel Guide	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

USB PORT


E176344

The USB port is located in the center console.

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 297).


E211463

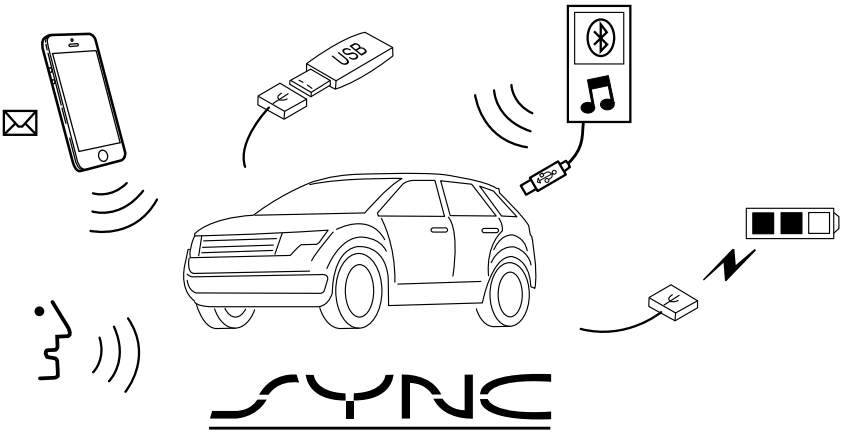
See your SYNC information.

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

You can locate the media hub inside the center console or on the instrument panel.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist and applications, such as Spotify and Glympse, via SYNC AppLink.*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 313).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is around you.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
(cancel | exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
(main menu | start again)	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (cancel | exit) appears you say; cancel or exit.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

Confirmation Prompts

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request.

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
confirmation prompts off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then any of the following:	
phone confirmation on	When enabled, this feature will prompt you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to the call being placed.
phone confirmation off	The system will make a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

Changing the Voice Settings

In addition to using voice commands to change the voice settings, you can also use the menu in the audio display.

To change the voice settings press the Menu button then select:

Menu Item
SYNC-Settings
Voice settings

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 4000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Using the Audio System

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates there is no paired phone, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device | phone | Bluetooth audio) | add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth Devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button. When prompted, say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone)	
Then say any of the following:	
call (___)	
call ___ at home	
call ___ ((in|at) [the] office | at work)	
call ___ on (cell | mobile)	
call ___ on other	
dial [[a] number]	1
([go to] privacy | transfer to phone | privacy on)	2
(hold call [on] | place call on hold)	2
join (calls | call)	2
mute call [on]	2
(mute call off | un-mute call)	2
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)	
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message) [3]
help

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Home".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Commands
411 (four-one-one), 911 (nine-one-one)
700 (seven hundred)
800 (eight hundred)
900 (nine hundred)
Clear (deletes all entered digits)
Delete (deletes last set of digits entered)
Number <0-9>
Plus
Pound (#)
Star (*)

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press any button on the audio system.*

To access text messages say:

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message)
Then say any of the following:
(listen to | read) ([text] message)
forward (text | [text] message)
reply to (text | [text] message)
call [sender]

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Changing Devices Using Voice Commands

Using SYNC, you can easily access multiple phones, ipods, or USB devices. to switch devices say:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Command	
(connect | device) ___	You can state the name of the desired device, such as "My iPhone","My Galaxy" or"My iPod". SYNC may ask you to confirm the type of device (Phone, USB, or Bluetooth Audio).

Making Calls



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	
call [[a] name]	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it. You can then say:

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(dial | send)	This initiates the call.
(delete | correct)	This erases the spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display.

Receiving Calls

Accepting calls

When receiving a call, you can answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to accept a call select:

Menu Item
Accept

Rejecting Calls

When receiving a call, you can reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to reject a call select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, such as putting a call on hold or joining calls.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select **More** to choose from the following options:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
Mic. off	Switch your vehicle's microphone off. To switch the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad (for example, numbers for passwords).
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty or conference call. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the **More** option. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired contact appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for call history and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages, as well as access phone and system settings.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Display	Description and action
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to access an alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select incoming, outgoing or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select 1 of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and then press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system's numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your phone.

Text Messaging

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Description and action
(listen to | read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action		
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.		
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:		
	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:	
		Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.
		Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
		Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, and then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
New	Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and, in addition, provides the option to have the system read the message to you. To go to the next message, select the **More** option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cellular phone). The audio display indicates when the system has deleted all your text messages.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cellular phone.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Sending a Text Message

Note: *You can only send a text message to one recipient at a time.*

1. Select the send option when the desired selection highlights in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears.
3. Press the OK button again to confirm when the system asks if you want to send the message. A pre-defined signature appears on each text message.

Note: *You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.*

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone and text message notification, modify your phonebook, and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system uses the cellular phone as the master when there is more than one cellular phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all cellular phones (not only the active phone) using the Bluetooth Devices menu.
Phone status	See the cellular phone name, provider name, cellular phone number, and signal level. When done, press the left arrow buttons to return to the phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's tones or your cellular phone's). If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cellular phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select a ringtone.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to switch the audible tone off or on.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook (such as add, delete or download). Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the choices in the phonebook preferences table below.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Phonebook preferences	
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cellular phone. See your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.	
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.	
Download now	Press the OK button to select and download your phonebook to the system.	
Auto-download	When automatic download is on, the system deletes any changes (additions or deletions) saved in the system since your last download.	
	When automatic download is off, the system does not download your phonebook when your cellular phone connects to SYNC.	
	You can only access your phonebook, call history and text messages when your paired cellular phone connects to the system. Check or uncheck this option to download your phonebook automatically each time your phone connects to the system. Download times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.	
Sorting Pref.	Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select:	
	First/Last name	Last/First name

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as set a phone as primary.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Add	Pair additional phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
	2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone. See your phone's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Skip the next step. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the phone as primary appears, select either yes or no. 5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.
Delete	Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a phone from the list, you have to repeat the pairing process to pair it again.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cellular phone each time you switch on the ignition. When you select a cellular phone as primary, it appears first in the list, marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired phone as master by selecting the master option and confirming it as the primary.
Conn.	Connect a previously connected phone. You can only have one phone connected at a time to use the phone's functionality. When you connect another phone, the previous phone disconnects from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cellular phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cellular phone. Select this option and confirm when asked. After disconnecting a phone, you can reconnect it again without repeating the full pairing process.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, and then press the **OK** button.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Scroll to select from the following options:

Display	Description and action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to switch the system's Bluetooth interface off or on. Select this option, and then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	Return to the factory default settings without erasing your indexed information (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored in the system (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to factory default settings.
Install on SYNC	Install downloaded applications or software updates. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 299).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrow buttons to enter or leave a folder. You can select media content for playback from this menu.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- SYNC AppLink: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications such as Spotify and Glympse (if your phone is compatible).

These features may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user switches 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off, either a voice message plays or a display message or an icon comes on when your vehicle is started and after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 38). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 188). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Setting 911 Assist On or Off

Press Menu then select

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Applications	
911 Assist	Select the desired option, on or off.

If you choose not to activate this feature you will have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Voice Reminder ON	Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
Voice Reminder OFF	Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel".

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

SYNC Mobile Apps

The system enables voice and steering wheel control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Availability of SYNC AppLink enabled Apps will vary by region.

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps work automatically with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *AppLink is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFordTouch system.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the menu on-screen. Then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll through the list of available applications and select a particular app or select:
	Find New Apps

Note: *If you cannot find a compatible SYNC AppLink app, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Accessing an App's Menu

When an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button on the steering wheel control to access the app menu.

You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down.

Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel control to exit the app menu.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button then when prompted say:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. When an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example "Play Playlist Road Trip".
help	Use this command to discover the available voice commands.

SYNC Mobile App Voice Commands

The following voice commands are always available:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	SYNC prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	SYNC lists all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	Searches your connected mobile device for SYNC-compatible mobile apps.
help	
You can say the name of a mobile app at any time to start the mobile app on SYNC.	

App Permissions

App permissions are organized by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app such as, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel economy, fuel consumption, engine speed, rain sensor, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, and head lamp status.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information such as, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine revolutions per minute, gear position, braking events, steering wheel angle, and accelerator pedal position.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state. Push notifications may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Note: *You only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

Enabling and Disabling App Permissions Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the SYNC menu then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
All Apps	You can also select a specific app. If the app supports push notifications, this setting is listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

There are three possible statuses:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Update Needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-To-Date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Update settings

Menu Item	Action and Description
Request Update	Select this option from the settings menu to manually preform a needed update.
Disable Updates	Select this option from the settings menu to disable automatic updates. Doing so also disables the use of Mobile Apps on SYNC.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artist and album.

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 15,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod, Zune, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display.

To view USB content select:

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the selected source starts to playback audio automatically.

You can browse the files on the USB device in categories. Select BROWSE from the buttons at the bottom of the audio display and choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists

Message
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; (what's | what is) playing, you must say either "what's playing" or "what is playing".

Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ___	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ___	
play [genre] ___	
play [playlist] ___	
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the next track on the current media.
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	Creates a playlist with a similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song | track | title | file] ___	
repeat off	
repeat (one | track) [on]	Repeats the current track.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Command	Description and Action
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current playlist in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth Audio on, press the MEDIA button and select:

Menu Item
BT audio

Then any of the following:

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat), find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display to start USB playback.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist or track.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If there are media files, you have the following options:

Display	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your device one at a time in numerical order.* Press the **OK** button to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats like ASX, M3U, WPL, or MTP).* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press the **OK** button.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press the **OK** button.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. The system then lists and plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press the **OK** button.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by album.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired album, and then press the **OK** button.
Genres	Sort all indexed media files by genre (category) type.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press the **OK** button.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC. (Other files are not visible.) 1. Press the **OK** button to select.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Display	Description and Action
	2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on the device, and then press the **OK** button.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

*You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:

Accessing and Viewing USB Media
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)
(browse | search | show) album ___
(browse | search | show) artist ___
(browse | search | show) genre ___
(browse | search | show) playlist ___

USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

You can access both USB devices by using voice commands.

To access a USB device press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
USB 1
USB 2

Note: *SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.*

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 301).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(music | audio | entertainment) [system]
Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
Bluetooth (audio | stereo)
(disc | CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] FM 2
Radio
tune [to] SAT *
Sirius *
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)
help

* If equipped.

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
Radio
You can then say any of the following commands.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
[tune [to]] (AM ___ | ___ [AM])
[tune [to]] AM preset ___
[tune [to]] AM1 preset ___
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset) preset ___

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Command
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ___ | ___ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM preset ___
FM ___ HD ___ *
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ___
HD ___ *
[tune [to]] preset ___
Tune
help

* If equipped.

Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands (If equipped)



To listen to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Commands
Sirius

When you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, you can press the voice button, and say any of the commands in the following table.

Voice Commands
tune [to] SAT
[tune [to]] SAT 1
[tune [to]] SAT 2
[tune [to]] SAT 3
[tune [to]] preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 1 preset ___

Voice Commands	
[tune [to]] SAT 2 preset ___	
[tune [to]] SAT 3 preset ___	
tune [to] [Sirius]	
Help	
[tune [to]] Sirius [channel] ___	You can say the channel number (0-233) to listen to that Sirius station.

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
(disc | CD [player]) play
You can then say any of the following commands.
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play | change to] track [number] ___
repeat (track | song) [on]
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle | random | mix) [on | (tracks | songs) [on]]

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Command
(shuffle | random | mix) (CD [player] | disc) [on]
(shuffle | random | mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		Turn off the Auto phone-book download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The device is not connected.	Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	
	The song may have copyright protection, which does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A". Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section. Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit' or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC. On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

SYNC System Reset
The SYNC system in your vehicle has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (Such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. Release both buttons after 2-3 seconds. Please allow a few minutes for the reset to complete. After a few minutes has passed you can resume using the SYNC system.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

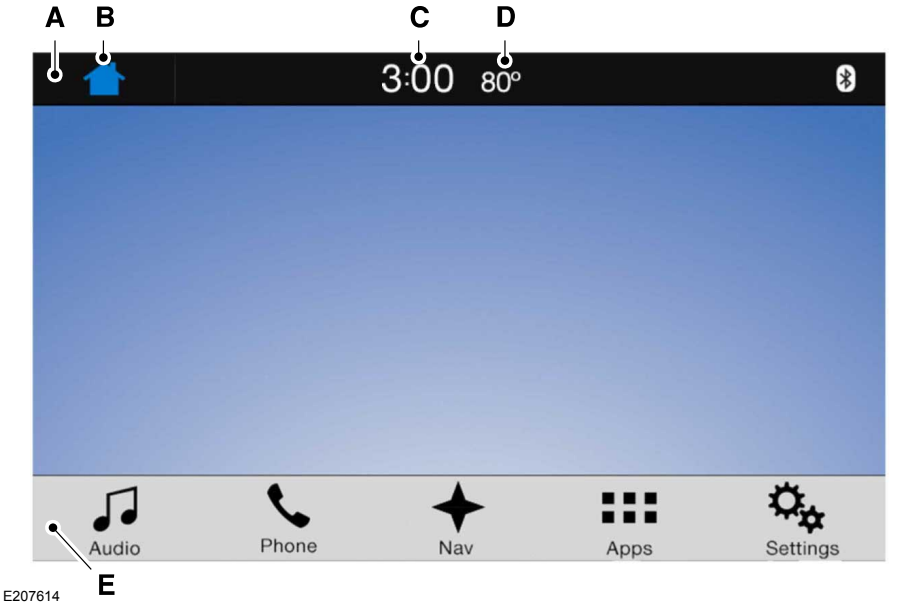
Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC AppLink.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button highlights when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 379).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

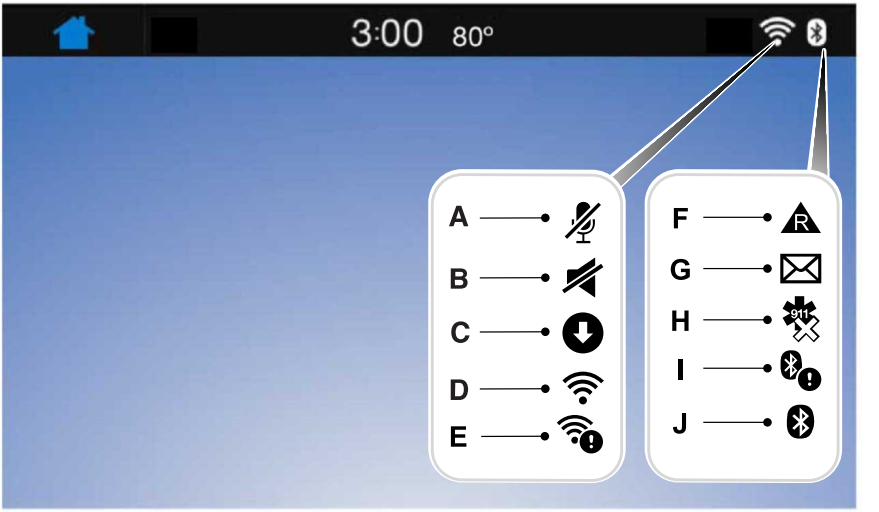
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing



E223058

Callout	Item	Description
A	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
B	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.
C	Download	This icon displays when SYNC 3 has received a software update. Pressing the icon will show more details about the new software.
D	Wi-Fi	This icon displays when the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.
E	Wi-Fi in Range	This icon displays when an available Wi-Fi network is within range.
F	Roaming	This icon displays when your cell phone is roaming.
G	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Callout	Item	Description
H	911 Assist Off	This icon displays when 911 Assist is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
I	Bluetooth Alert	This icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.
J	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iPhone or Android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and eyes on the road. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 347).

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models,* ***SEEK NEXT*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE REJECT*** *and* ***SEEK PREVIOUS*** *may be combined with* ***PHONE ACCEPT.***

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 71).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** se as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA**: Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Audio System** (page 281).
- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **Climate Control** (page 104).

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch 911 Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 379).

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h). Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Creating an Owner Account

Why do I need an owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

SYNC Connect (If Equipped)

With a SYNC® Connect-equipped vehicle, you can use FordPass® to track your vehicle's location and remotely access vehicle features such as start, lock and unlock and vehicle status including fuel level and approximate mileage. You can also schedule specific times to remotely start your vehicle so it's ready to hit the road as soon as you are. SYNC Connect is an optional feature on select 2017 MY vehicles. FordPass® is available through a free download via the Apple App Store® or Google Play™. Message and data rates may apply. Services may be limited by mobile phone network coverage area.

- FCC: LHJ-FAN
- IC: 2807E-FAN

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

Please refer to the website for any further actions.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To enable automatic updates using Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 379). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 393).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

United States: 1-800-392-3673.

Canada: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you sell or transfer your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 379). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HOME SCREEN



Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, 911 assist setting state (On or Off), text messaging and roaming.
C	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Item	Tile	Home screen display
		If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and phone. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of a artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ *	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
FM ___ HD ___ *	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as “88.7 FM HD 1”.
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

* This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 379).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Shows the current route.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

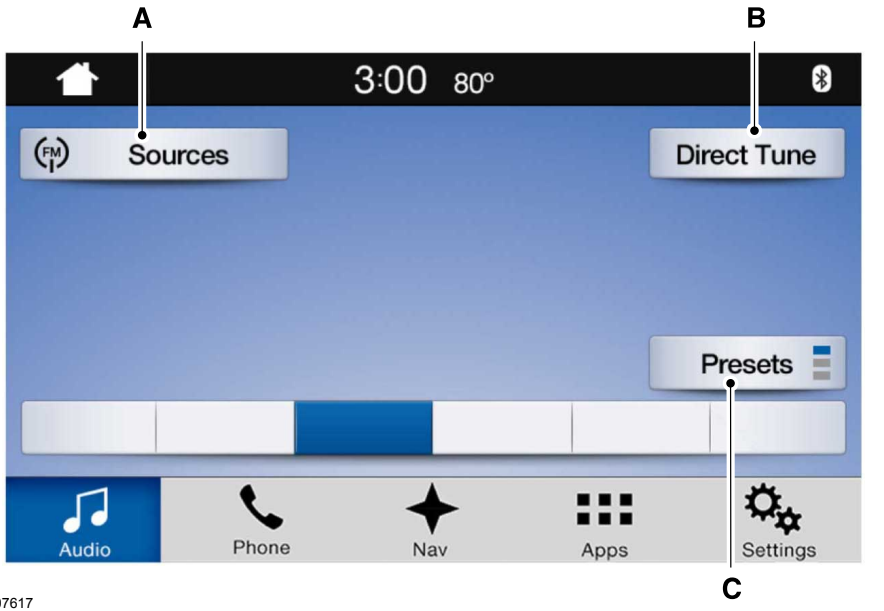
You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

ENTERTAINMENT



E207617

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS *	
CD	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

* This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*



E234451

SiriusXM satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SiriusXM satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SiriusXM satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

The following buttons are available for SiriusXM:

Menu item	Action and description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu item	Action and description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See **Settings** (page 379).	

Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

There are three preset banks available for SiriusXM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 379).

SiriusXM Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Troubleshooting tips		
Message	**Cause**	**Action**
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SiriusXM satellite or SiriusXM tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SiriusXM has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets.*

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 379).

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

Website
www.hdradio.com

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

Note: *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. *
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. *

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from DTS Inc. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS Inc. Ford Motor Company and DTS Inc. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

* You can find the form here:

Website
http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback

CD

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

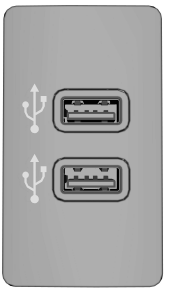
While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Button	Function
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as Pandora or iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 376).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PHONE

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

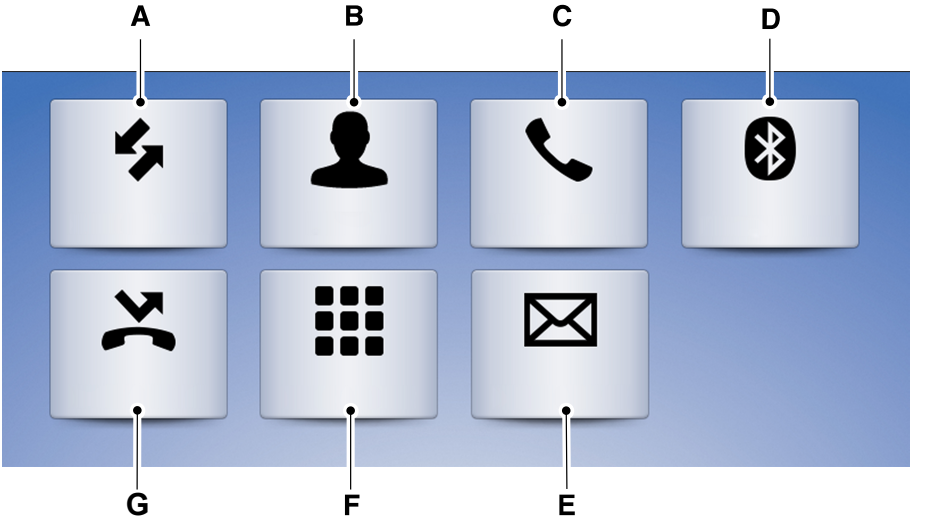
To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Websites
owner.ford.com

Websites
www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E251249

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
		You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.			
D	Change Device	Gives you access to the list of paired or connected Bluetooth devices allowing you to change or select a device.			
E	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.			
F	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.			
		Call		Press this button to begin a call.	
G	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to reject all incoming calls automatically. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.			

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 347). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.
- 911 Assist (United States and Canada only). See **Settings** (page 379).

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 296).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay.

After completing the setup, your phone connects to CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: *The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.*

2. Plug your device into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 296).
3. To switch this feature on from the Settings screen, scroll left on the screen and select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Enable Android Auto

Note: *Android Auto must be switched on after plugging in your device.*

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select* ***Apple CarPlay Preferences*** *or* ***Android Auto Preferences****.*

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.



Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.



Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

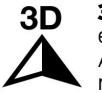
You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mi (5 km).



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.



Mute: Press to mute the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute the guidance.





Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

If you have subscribed to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (where available), traffic flow will be indicated on the map by green (clear), yellow (slowing), and red (stopped) road highlights. Traffic flow is indicated where the information is available and varies across the US.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 379).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"
	Partial Address (number, street) if searching in current state (number, street and zip code (or postal code in Canada)) if searching out of state You can enter unique addresses that contain door number prefixes with or without the prefix. For example, you could enter "6N340 Fairway Lane" or "340 Fairway Lane".
	City (name or zip code)
	Point of Interest (name or category)
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.	
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.	
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.	
	Delete All	Select this option to remove all previous destinations.
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Description	
	The address saves as a favorite and you see the favorites screen. You can now select this address from the favorites screen.	
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	
	See All	Press to view additional categories. Once you have selected a category, follow the menus to find what you are looking for.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Economical Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation. The system asks for confirmation then returns you to the map mode screen.	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving. The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	Highway exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Button		
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays (if any are present). When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.	
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 379).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

SYNC AppLink

The AppLink app allows you to use some SYNC 3 navigation features on your phone.

First Mile Navigation

When you switch your ignition off, the location of your vehicle is recorded and sent to your SYNC AppLink app. The location of your vehicle can be viewed within the app. You can also view walking directions to your vehicle.

Last Mile Navigation

When you park near your destination, the system provides walking directions to your destination.

POI Search

Your paired phone can be used to access additional points of interest (POI). These points of interest can only be access when your phone is paired.

Send To Car

You can send destinations to your navigation system using a computer or phone using AppLink.

cityseeker (If Equipped)

Note: *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1,110 cities (1,049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*



E225487

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores. See **Apps** (page 376).

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico. You can also visit:

Website
www.navigation.com/sync

You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com/mapcreator. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Map coverage includes the USA (including Puerto Rico and the US Virgin Islands), Canada and Mexico.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps.

Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:*

Websites
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites.We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.*

Note: *AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through AppLink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the app needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 379).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.*

Note: *In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.*

Note: *A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.*

Note: *Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.*

Note: *Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.*

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Sound Settings	
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Gracenote® Management	Switches on and off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Disconnect	
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Pressing the info icon next to the device name allows you to see phone and device information

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Manage Contacts		
You can then select:		
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

911 Assist

Note: *This service is only available in the United States and Canada.*

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phone-book as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the 911 Assist call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, If Available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

Sirius XM (If equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Category for Seek	After selecting a category, seek function only stops on channels which are inside that selected category.
Parental Lockout	Select to create a personal identification number (PIN). This allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.
Edit Alerts	Select to switch on, off or delete alerts.

The Electronic Serial Number can also be found on this screen. This number is necessary to activate, modify or track your account through Sirius XM.

Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map. A rest area POI icon may display on the map regardless of this setting.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.
Avoid Freeways	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids freeways when computing a navigation route.
Avoid Toll Roads	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids Toll Roads when computing a navigation route.
Avoid Ferries/Car Trains	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids the use of Ferries or Trains when computing a navigation route.

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	A tone sounds followed by voice instructions.
Voice Only	Only voice instructions are given.
Tones Only	Only a tone sounds to prompt you.

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device. The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

<table>
<tr><th>Menu Item</th><th colspan="3">Action and Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Mobile Apps</td><td colspan="3">Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.
Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Update Mobile Apps</td><td colspan="3">This provides information on the current state of available app updates.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">There are three possible statuses:</td></tr>
<tr><td>Update Needed</td><td>Up-To-Date</td><td>Updating Mobile Apps...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.</td><td>No update is required.</td><td>The system is trying to receive an update.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Request Update</td><td>Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:</td></tr>
</table>

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
		Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.	
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.	

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Panel Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About SYNC	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi & Hotspot

Access SYNC Wi-Fi and Vehicle Hotspot settings and information.

System Wi-Fi

You can access the following:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Vehicle Hotspot (If Equipped)

You can access the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi Hotspot On/Off	Allows you to turn the hotspot on and off.
Settings	Allows you to view and edit hotspot settings such as the SSID and password.
Data Usage	Allows you to view your vehicle's hotspot plan and data usage.
Manage Devices	Allows you to manage devices connected to your hotspot.

Note: *The Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (Vehicle Hotspot) may be operational while ignition is On and may remain operational while the ignition is Off.*

Note: *Vehicle Hotspot services are provided by the vehicle network carrier, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

Note: *It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred. If the owner would like to remove the vehicle from the account for any reason, please contact your vehicle network carrier for more information.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Note: *: Data, e.g. the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), SIM Card ID, and data plan usage, is shared between Ford and the vehicle network carrier to provide the Vehicle Hotspot service in accordance with your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability, and may be used to enable a seamless transition from an old to new embedded modem and to confirm any updates are successfully delivered.*

Note: *: For your convenience data usage may be available for monitoring under Settings but may not reflect actual or current usage. The vehicle network carrier is responsible for providing information about your account. Please contact the vehicle network carrier for more information.*

Note: *: Ford may need to update operating system software on your vehicle, including security updates and bug fixes, to keep connected services current, like Vehicle Hotspot, without prior notice to you.*

Note: *If you do not have an active vehicle hotspot data plan, open your web browser and go to a website using the HTTP protocol to be automatically redirected to the vehicle network carrier landing page where you can purchase data. Websites using HTTPS will not automatically redirect.*

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Door Keypad Code (If equipped)

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Enhanced Park Aids	When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image.
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

United States: 1-800-392-3673
Canada: 1-800-565-3673

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 353).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See **Settings** (page 379).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Connect Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps',

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Connect Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>|) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Customer Relationship Center	United States: 1-800-392-3673
	Canada: 1-800-565-3673
Website	owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

Web Address (United States)
www.Accessories.Ford.com

Web Address (Canada)
www.Accessories.Ford.ca

Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through an authorized Ford dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior style

- Graphics.
- Hood deflector.*
- Keyless entry.
- Side window deflectors.*
- Splash guards.
- Spoilers.
- Wheels.
- Bumper protector.

Interior style

- All-weather floor mats.
- Cargo area protectors.
- Cargo organizers.
- Door sill plates.
- Interior light kit.
- Interior trim.
- Premium carpeted floor mats.
- Shift knobs.
- Sport pedals.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup and smokers packages.
- Portable media player.*
- Roof racks and carriers.*
- Tablet holder.*

Peace of mind

- Bumper-mounted parking sensor.*
- First aid kit.*
- Full vehicle covers.*
- Locking fuel plug.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security systems.
- Wheel locks.
- Roadside assistance kits.*

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Footnote
*Ford Licensed Accessory. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle:

- Do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of radio transmitter-equipped mobile communications systems, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment should comply with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations, and an authorized dealer should install this equipment.
- An authorized dealer should install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD PROTECT EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)

Ford Protect extended service plan means peace of mind. It's the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, Insist on Ford Protect extended service plans!

Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With Ford Protect extended service plan you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it's probably easier to list what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we'll give you a loaner to use for the day.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Which should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

Ford Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc (if equipped).
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment (if equipped).
- Cabin air filter replacement every 20,000 mi (32,000 km) (electric vehicles only).

Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information; visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 268).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change.

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check Every Month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Check Every Month
Windshield washer fluid level.
Fuel and water separator. Drain if necessary (or if indicated by the information display).
Holes and slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris.

Check Every Six Months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Multi-Point Inspection	
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels[1]; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure[2]
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

[1] Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

[2] If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the message prompting you to change your oil	
Interval	**Vehicle use and example**
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

When to expect the message prompting you to change your oil	
Interval	**Vehicle use and example**
	No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display[1]
Change engine oil and filter.[2]
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with a dipstick). Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

[1] Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

[2] Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Other maintenance items[1]	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant.[2]
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s).[3]
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km).
	Replace timing and oil pump belt (1.0L engine).

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

[3] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers). Perform the 30000-mile (48000-kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers]). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 50000 miles (80000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 215).

Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3000 miles (5000 kilometers).

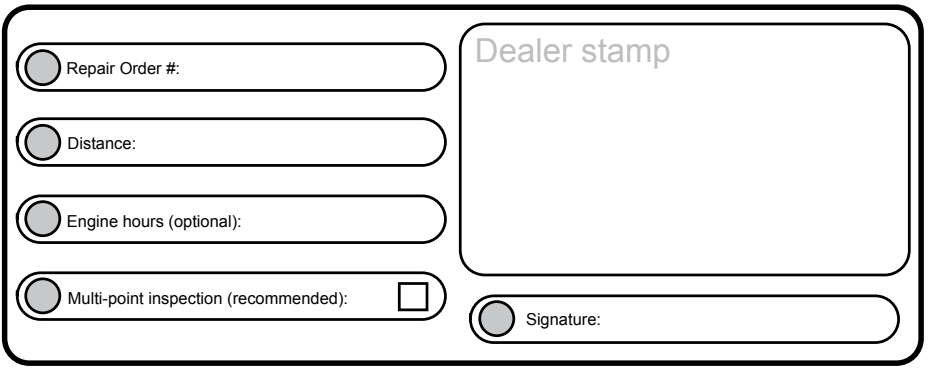
If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1800 miles (3000 kilometers).

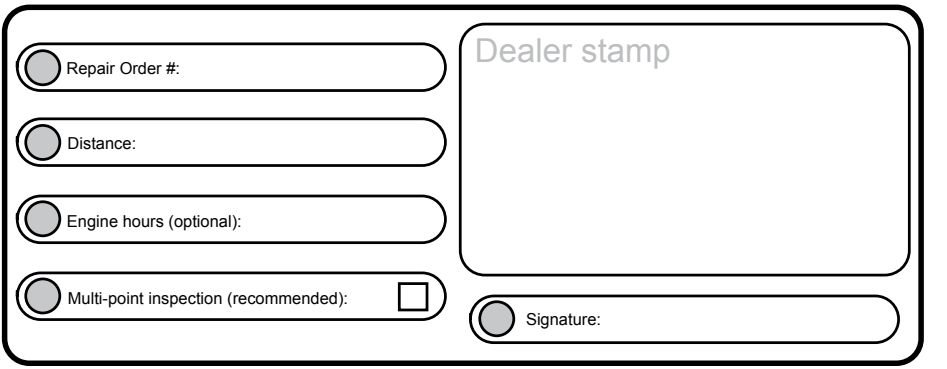
Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD





2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

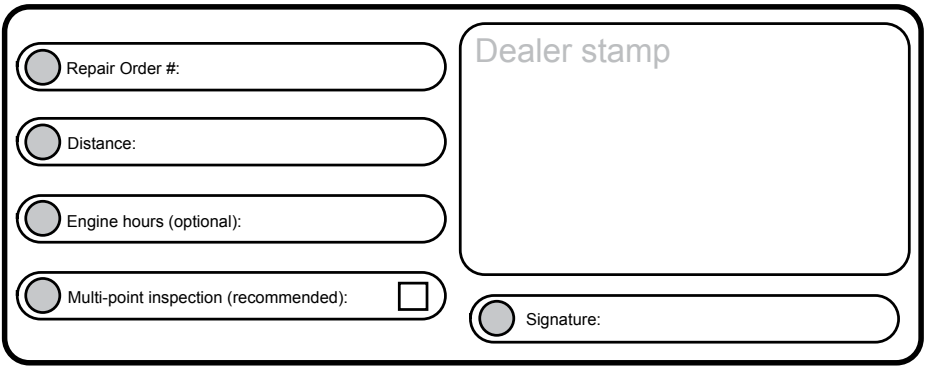
Engine hours (optional):

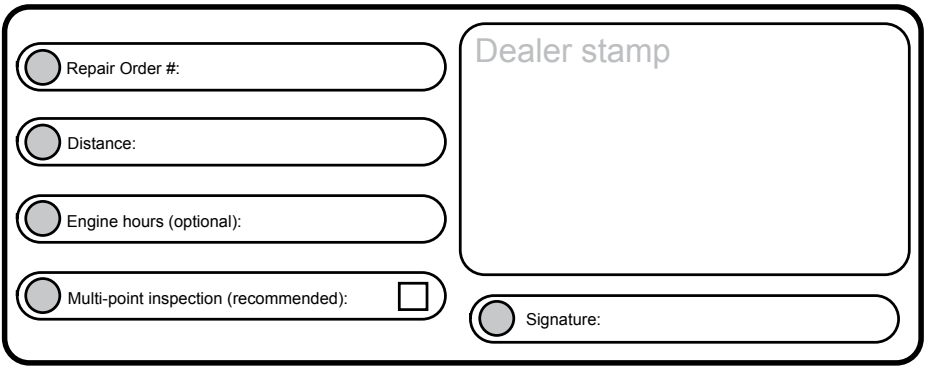
Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

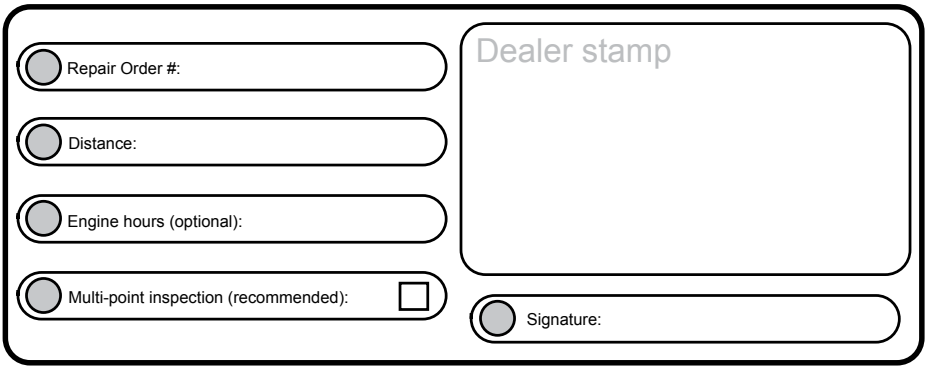
Signature:

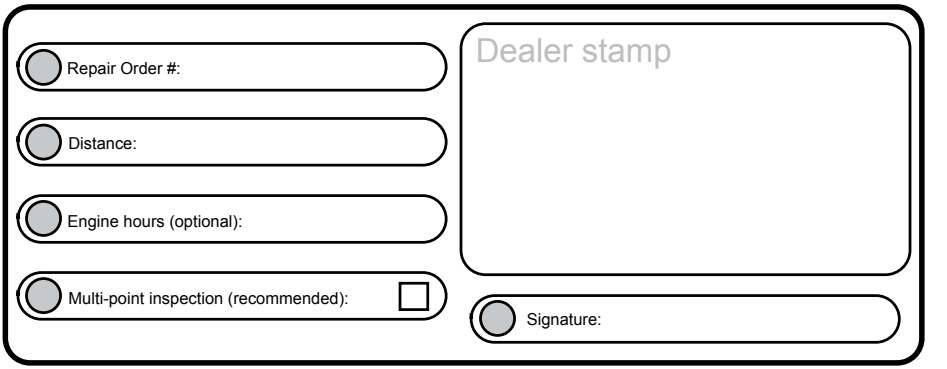
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing





2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing





2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

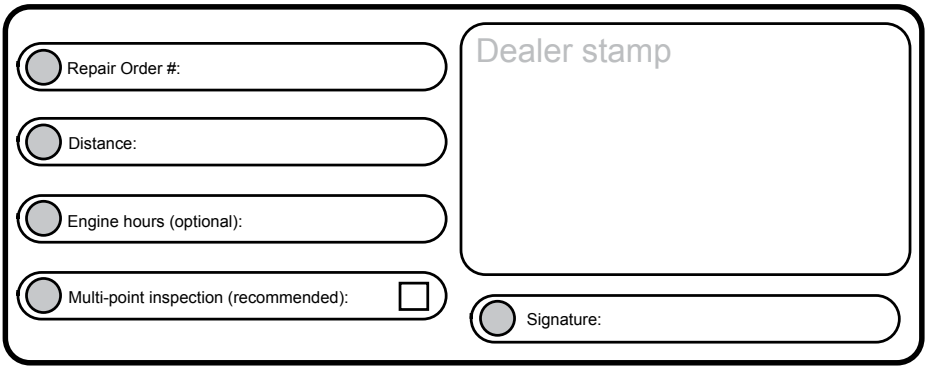
Engine hours (optional):

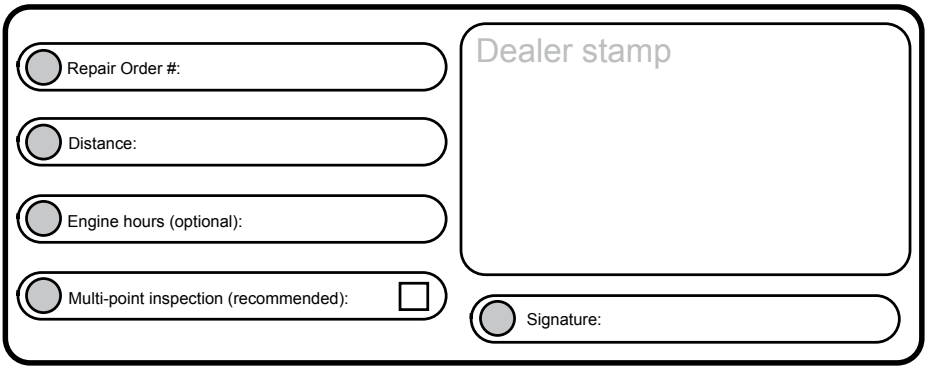
Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing





2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

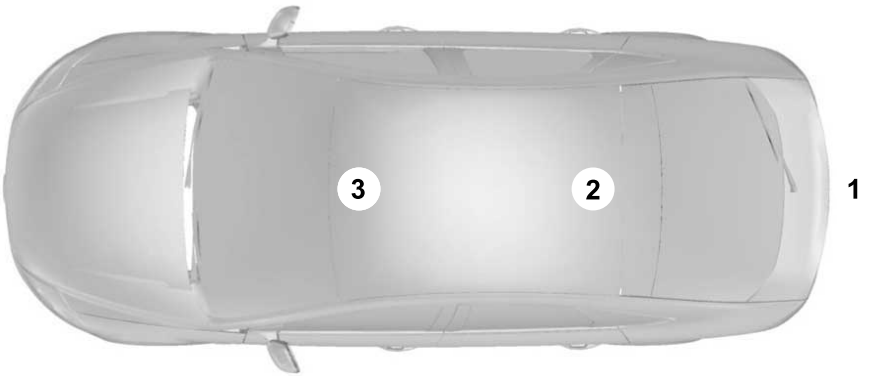
WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Car



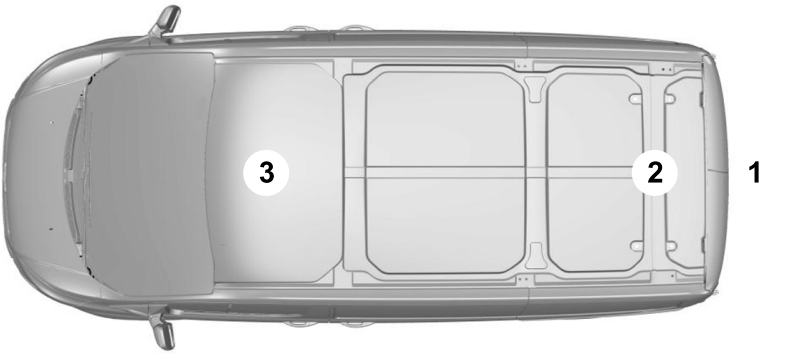
E239120

Note: *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.*

Note: *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following table. We do not provide special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

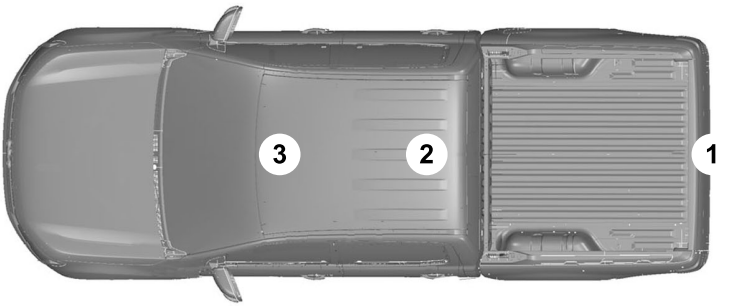
2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Van



E239122

Truck



E239121

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

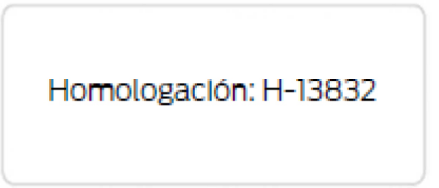
Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

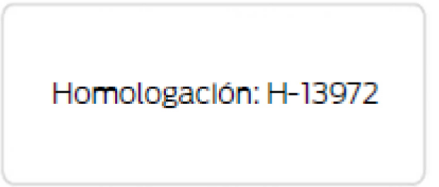
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

TYPE APPROVALS



E207834



E207823

Canada



E207827

China



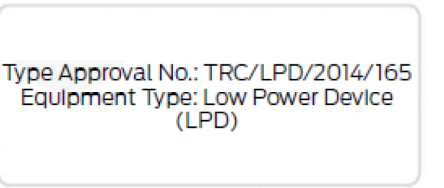
E206304

European Union



E207828

Indonesia



E207829

Jordan

RLV-COA2140373

E207833

Mexico

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
MR 9522 ANRT 2014
08/08/2014

E207831

Morocco

MSIP-RRM-TAL-86013500

E206301

South Korea

Complies with
IDA Standards
[KR586013500] Registration Number:
N3499-14
Ford Dealer License Number: DA 00461

E207832

Singapore

ICASA

TA-2014/1357

Approved

E206300

South Africa

CCAB14LP4760T0

E206303

CCAB14LP4770T0

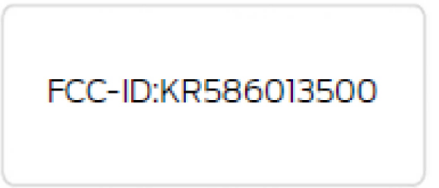
E206302

Taiwan



E206305

Ukraine



E207830

United States

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....104
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....147
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....148
Accessories....405
Exterior style....405
Interior style....405
Lifestyle....405
Peace of mind....405
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Active Park Assist....155
Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature....157
Parallel Parking Assist....155
Troubleshooting the System....158
Adjusting the Headlamps....225
Horizontal Aim Adjustment....226
Vertical Aim Adjustment....225
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....71
Airbag Disposal....46
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....104
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter....234
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....70
Ambient Lighting....81
Anti-Theft Alarm....70
Arming the Alarm....70
Disarming the Alarm....70
Appendices....427
Apps....376
....376
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....378
Audible Warnings and Indicators....90
Fasten Safety Belt....91
Headlamps On Warning Chime....90
Key in Ignition Warning Chime....90
Keyless Warning Alert....90
Low Fuel Minder....91
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....91
Audio Control....71
Seek, Next or Previous....72
Audio System....281
General Information....281
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Satellite Radio....289
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System....285
Menu Structure....286
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC....282
Autolamps....77
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....77
Automatic Climate Control....105
Dual Zone Temperature Control....107
Single Zone Temperature Control....106
Temperature Control....106
Automatic High Beam Control....79
Automatic High Beam Indicator....80
Overriding the System....80
Switching the System On and Off....79
Automatic Transmission....142
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....146
Brake-Shift Interlock....145
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....146
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....143
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....143
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....221
Auto-Start-Stop....127
Limitations of Use....128
Switching the System On and Off....128
Using Auto-Start-Stop with a Manual Transmission....127
Using Auto-Start-Stop with an Automatic Transmission....127
Auxiliary Power Points....117
12 Volt DC Power Point....117
Location....117

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....222
Blind Spot Information System....169
Switching the System Off and On....170
System Errors....170
Using the Blind Spot Information System....170
BLIS
See: Blind Spot Information System....169
Body Styling Kits....243
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....211
Booster Seats....24
Types of Booster Seats....24
Brake Fluid Check....221
Brakes....147
General Information....147
Breaking-In....186
Bulb Specification Chart....232

C

Cabin Air Filter....109
California Proposition 65....11
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....274
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....276
Capacities....274
Specifications....274
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L....277
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....280
Capacities....277
Specifications....278
Capacities and Specifications....268
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....237
Catalytic Converter....137
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)....138
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing....138
Center Console....118
Changing a Bulb....227
Front Fog Lamp....229
Headlamp....227
LED Rear Lamps....232
Rear Lamps - 4 Door....230
Rear Lamps - 5 Door....231
Replacing Licence Plate and High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs....232
Changing a Fuse....209
Fuses....209
Changing a Road Wheel....263
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....263
Tire Change Procedure....264
Changing the 12V Battery....222
Changing the Engine Air Filter....234
Changing the Front Wiper Blades....223
Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades....224
Service Position....224
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades....224
Checking MyKey System Status....58
MyKey Distance....58
Number of Admin Keys....58
Number of MyKeys....58
Checking the Wiper Blades....223
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....35
Child Restraint Positioning....26
Child Safety....16
General Information....16
Child Safety Locks....27
Left-Hand Side....28
Right-Hand Side....28
Cleaning Leather Seats....240
Cleaning Products....236
Cleaning the Engine....238
Cleaning the Exterior....237
Cleaning the Headlamps....237
Exterior Chrome Parts....237
Exterior Plastic Parts....237
Stripes or Graphics....238
Underbody....238
Under Hood....238
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....240
Cleaning the Interior....239
Cleaning the Wheels....241
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....239

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Clearing All MyKeys....57
Climate Control....104
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission....221
Cold Weather Precautions....186
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check....217
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....45
Creating a MyKey....56
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings....56
Cross Traffic Alert....171
Blocked Sensors....172
Switching the System Off and On....173
System Errors....173
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts....172
System Limitations....173
Using the Cross Traffic Alert System....171
Cruise Control....72
Principle of Operation....162
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control....162
Customer Assistance....193

D

Data Recording....9
Event Data Recording....10
Service Data Recording....9
Daytime Running Lamps....78
Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)....78
Type 2 - Configurable....78
Digital Radio....291
HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting....292
Direction Indicators....80
Doors and Locks....60
Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™....235
Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L....235
Driver Alert....164
Principle of Operation....164
Using Driver Alert....164
Driver and Passenger Airbags....39
Children and Airbags....40
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment....39
Driver Knee Airbag....44
Driving Aids....164
Driving at High Speed....266
Driving Hints....186
Driving Through Water....186
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps....78

E

Eco Mode....173
Resetting Eco Mode....174
Type 1....174
Economical Driving....186
Electromagnetic Compatibility....427
Emission Law....136
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance....137
Tampering With a Noise Control System....136
End User License Agreement....429
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 429
Engine Block Heater....125
Using the Engine Block Heater....126
Engine Coolant Check....217
Adding Coolant....217
Coolant Change....219
Engine Coolant Temperature Management....220
Fail-Safe Cooling....219
Recycled Coolant....218
Severe Climates....219
Engine Cooling Fan....216
Engine Emission Control....136
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....68
Engine Oil Check....215
Adding Engine Oil....215
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™....215
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L....215
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....268
Engine Specifications - 2.0L....269

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Entertainment....353
AM/FM Radio....354
Apps....362
Bluetooth Stereo or USB....361
CD....360
HD Radio™ Information (If Available)....357
SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)....355
Sources....354
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information....362
USB Ports....362
Environment....15
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording....9
Export Unique Options....13
Exterior Mirrors....83
Blind Spot Monitor....84
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors....83
Heated Exterior Mirrors....83
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors....83
Power Exterior Mirrors....83

F

Fan
See: Engine Cooling Fan....216
Fastening the Seatbelts....30
Seatbelt Locking Modes....31
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy....30
Floor Mats....187
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps....80
Ford Credit....11
US Only....11
Ford Protect....407
Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY)....408
Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)....407
Front Fog Lamps....80
Front Parking Aid....154
Front Passenger Sensing System....40
Front Wiper Blades
See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades....223
Fuel and Refueling....129
Fuel Consumption....134
Fuel Economy....134
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....130
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....129
Choosing the Right Fuel....129
Fuel Shutoff....189
Fuses....200
Fuse Specification Chart....200
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....200
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box....206
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....204

G

Gauges....86
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....86
Fuel Gauge....87
Information Display....86
Gearbox
See: Transmission....140
General Information on Radio Frequencies....47
General Maintenance Information....409
Multi-Point Inspection....411
Owner Checks and Services....410
Protecting Your Investment....409
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?....409
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?....409
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....196
Getting the Services You Need....193
Away From Home....193

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....148
Hazard Flashers....189
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....225
Headlamp Exit Delay....78
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp....226
Headrest
See: Head Restraints....111
Head Restraints....111
Adjusting the Head Restraint....112

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Tilting Head Restraints 112
Heated Seats....116
Heated Steering Wheel....73
Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
Heated Exterior Mirrors....109
Heated Rear Window....109
Heating
See: Climate Control....104
Hill Start Assist....148
Switching the System On and Off....149
Using Hill Start Assist....149
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....107
Cooling the Interior Quickly....108
General Hints....107
Heating the Interior Quickly....107
Recommended Settings for Cooling 108
Recommended Settings for Heating....108
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....109
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....148
Home Screen....346
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....211

I

Ignition Switch....119
In California (U.S. Only)....194
Information Display Control....72
Information Displays....92
General Information....92
Information Messages....96
Installing Child Restraints....17
Child Restraints....17
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts....18
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)....20
Using Tether Straps....22
Instrument Cluster....86
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....77
Interior Lamps....80
Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)....80
Interior Luggage Compartment Release - 4-Door....66
Interior Mirror....84
Introduction....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....190
Connecting the Jumper Cables....190
Jump Starting....191
Preparing Your Vehicle....190
Removing the Jumper Cables....191

K

Keyless Entry....65
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD....65
Keyless Starting....119
Failure to Start....120
Fast Restart....121
Starting Your Vehicle....120
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....121
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....121
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode....120
Keys and Remote Controls....47

L

Lane Keeping System....165
Switching the System On and Off....166
Lighting Control....76
Headlamp Flasher....77
High Beams....76
Parking Lamps....76
Lighting....76
General Information....76
Load Carrying....176
Load Limit....176
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles....181
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer....176
Locking and Unlocking....60
Activating Intelligent Access....61
Autolock....62
Autounlock....63
Battery Saver....63
Disabled Intelligent Access Keys....62

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Illuminated Entry....63
Illuminated Exit....63
Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment....64
Power Door Locks....60
Remote Control....60
Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter....62
Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys....62
Luggage Covers....176
Removing the Cover....176
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....263
Lug Nuts....267

M

Maintenance....211
General Information....211
Manual Climate Control....104
Manual Liftgate....64
Closing the Liftgate....65
Opening the Liftgate....65
Manual Seats....113
Manual Transmission - 5-Speed Manual Transmission (MTX-75)....141
Parking Your Vehicle....142
Recommended Shift Speeds....142
Reverse....142
Using the Clutch....141
Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual Transmission (MMT6)....140
Parking Your Vehicle....141
Recommended Shift Speeds....140
Reverse....140
Using the Clutch....140
Media Hub....296
Message Center
See: Information Displays....92
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
See: Windows and Mirrors....82
Mobile Communications Equipment....13
Moonroof....85
Bounce-Back....85
Opening and Closing the Moonroof....85
Venting the Moonroof....85
Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L EcoBoost™....270
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L....271
MyKey Troubleshooting....58
MyKey™....55
Principle of Operation....55

N

Navigation....368
cityseeker....375
Destination Mode....370
Map Mode....369
Navigation Map Updates....376
Navigation Menu....373
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....376
SYNC AppLink....375
Waypoints....374
Normal Scheduled Maintenance....412
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™....412
Normal Maintenance Intervals....413

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset....216
Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System....216
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....215
Opening and Closing the Hood....211
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....197
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual....198
Overhead Console....118

P

Parking Aids....153
Principle of Operation....153
Parking Brake....148
All Vehicles....148
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission....148
Vehicles With Manual Transmission....148
Passive Anti-Theft System....68
SecuriLock....68
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....68

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Perchlorate....11
Personal Safety System™....37
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?....37
Phone....363
During a Phone Call....366
Making Calls....365
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....363
Phone Menu....364
Receiving Calls....366
Smartphone Connectivity....367
Text Messaging....367
Post-Crash Alert System....192
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....60
Power Seats....113
Power Lumbar....114
Power Windows....82
Accessory Delay....83
Bounce-Back....82
One-Touch Close....82
One-Touch Open....82
Rear Window Lock....82
Protecting the Environment....15

R

Rear Parking Aid....153
Rear Seats....114
Folding the Seatback....114
Rear Under Floor Storage....176
Cargo Management System....176
Rear View Camera....159
Enhanced Park Aids....161
Using the Rear View Camera System....159
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....159
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....75
Rear Window Washer....75
Rear Window Wiper....75
Rear Wiper Blades
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades....224
Refueling....132
Refueling System Overview....132
Refueling System Warning....134
Refueling Your Vehicle....132
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Integrated Key Transmitter....50
Changing the Remote Control Battery....50
Integrated Keyhead Transmitter....50
Locating Your Vehicle....51
Programming a New Remote Control....50
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....50
Sounding the Panic Alarm....51
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry....47
Changing the Remote Control Battery....48
Intelligent Access Key....47
Locating Your Vehicle....49
Programming a New Remote Control....48
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....48
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry with Remote Start....51
Changing the Remote Control Battery....52
Intelligent Access Key....51
Locating Your Vehicle....53
Programming a New Remote Control....52
Remote Start....53
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....52
Sounding the Panic Alarm....53
Remote Start....110
Automatic Settings....110
Heated and Cooled Devices....110
Last Settings....110
Removing a Headlamp....226
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....241
Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Collision Repairs....12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....12
Warranty on Replacement Parts....12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....54
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....198
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....198
Roadside Assistance....188
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance....189

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage....189
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance....189
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance....188
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance....188
Roadside Emergencies....188
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....186
Running Out of Fuel....130
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....131
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....130

S

Safety Canopy™....44
Safety Precautions....129
Satellite Radio....294
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)....295
Satellite Radio Reception Factors....294
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service....294
Troubleshooting....295
Scheduled Maintenance Record....417
Scheduled Maintenance....409
Seatbelt Extension....35
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....32
Seatbelt Reminder....33
Belt-Minder™....33
Seatbelts....29
Principle of Operation....29
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....32
Conditions of operation....33
Seats....111
Security....68
Settings....379
911 Assist....384
Ambient Lighting....391
Bluetooth....381
Clock....381
Display....392
General....389
Media Player....380
Mobile Apps....387
Navigation....385
Phone....381
Radio....384
Sound....379
Valet Mode....393
Vehicle....391
Voice Control....392
Wi-Fi & Hotspot....389
Side Airbags....43
Sitting in the Correct Position....111
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....259
Spare Wheel
See: Changing a Road Wheel....263
Special Notices....12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty....12
On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector....13
Special Instructions....12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance....414
Exceptions....416
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....162
Stability Control....151
Principle of Operation....151
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....119
Starting a Gasoline Engine....122
Automatic Engine Shutdown....123
Failure to Start....123
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes....125
Important Ventilating Information....125
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....124
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....124
Vehicles with an Ignition Key....122
Vehicles with Keyless Start....122
Starting and Stopping the Engine....119
General Information....119
Steering....174
Electric Power Steering....174
Steering Wheel....71
Storage Compartments....118
Sunroof
See: Moonroof....85

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Sun Visors....84
Illuminated Vanity Mirror....84
Supplementary Restraints System....38
Principle of Operation....38
Symbols Glossary....7
SYNC™ 3....335
General Information....335
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting....393
SYNC™ Applications and Services....313
911 Assist....313
SYNC Mobile Apps....315
SYNC™....297
General Information....297
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....327

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate....64
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....268
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only)....195
Tire Care....244
Glossary of Tire Terminology....246
Important Information for 235/40R18 Low-Profile Tires and Wheels....244
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading....244
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall....247
Temperature A B C....245
Traction AA A B C....245
Treadwear....245
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....260
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....261
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System....261
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires....244
Towing a Trailer....182
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission....183
Emergency Towing....183
Recreational Towing....183
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L, Automatic Transmission....183
Emergency Towing....183
Recreational Towing....184
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission....182
Recreational Towing....182
Towing....182
Traction Control....150
Principle of Operation....150
Transmission Code Designation....273
Transmission....140
Transporting the Vehicle....182
Trip Computer....95
All Values....95
Average Fuel Consumption....95
Distance to Empty....95
Instantaneous Fuel....95
Outside Air Temperature....95
Resetting the Trip Computer....95
Trip Odometer....95
Trip Timer....96
Type Approvals....455

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™....213
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L....214
Unique Driving Characteristics....127
USB Port....296
Using Cruise Control....162
Switching Cruise Control Off....162
Switching Cruise Control On....162
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....58
Using Snow Chains....259
Using Stability Control....152
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....318
Accessing Your USB Song Library....322
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings....324
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port....318
Media Menu Features....321
Media Voice Commands....319
USB 2....324

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Voice Commands for Audio Sources.....325
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....301
Accessing Features through the Phone Menu.....306
Accessing Your Phone Settings.....309
Bluetooth Devices.....310
Making Calls.....305
Pairing a Phone for the First Time.....302
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....303
Phone Options during an Active Call.....305
Phone Voice Commands.....303
Receiving Calls.....305
System Settings.....311
Text Messaging.....307
Using Traction Control.....150
Switching the System Off.....150
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....150
Using a Switch.....150
Using the Information Display Controls.....150
Using Voice Recognition.....299
Audio Voice Commands.....348
Initiating a Voice Session.....299
Mobile App Voice Commands.....351
Navigation Voice Commands.....350
Phone Voice Commands.....349
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands.....352
System Interaction and Feedback.....300
Voice Settings Commands.....352
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....196

V

Vehicle Care.....236
General Information.....236
Vehicle Certification Label.....273
Vehicle Identification Number.....272
Vehicle Storage.....241
Battery.....242
Body.....242
Brakes.....242
Cooling system.....242
Engine.....242
Fuel system.....242
General.....241
Miscellaneous.....242
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....242
Tires.....242
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....104
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....272
Voice Control.....72

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....87
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator.....87
Airbag Warning Lamp.....87
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....87
Auto-Start-Stop Indicator.....88
Battery Charging Condition Warning Lamp.....88
Blind Spot Information System Indicator.....88
Brake System Warning Lamp.....88
Cruise Control Indicator.....88
Direction Indicator.....88
Door Ajar Warning Lamp.....89
Engine Warning Lamps.....89
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....89
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....89
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....89
Lamps on Indicator.....89
Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp.....89
Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp.....89
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....89
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....90
Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp.....90
Message Center Indicator.....90
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....90
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....90
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....90
Washer Fluid Check.....222
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....237
See: Wipers and Washers.....74
Waxing.....238

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....263
Wheels and Tires.....244
Windows and Mirrors.....82
Windshield Washers.....74
Windshield Wipers.....74
Intermittent Wipe.....74
Speed Dependent Wipers.....74
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....223
Wipers and Washers.....74
Wrecker Towing
See: Transporting the Vehicle.....182

2018 Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, JM5J 19A321 AA enUSA, Edition date: 201706, Second Printing

JM5J 19A321 AA, Edition date: 201706